



ZIMBABWE

Ministry of Primary and  
Secondary Education



# History Module

## Level II

### Volume 2



Lifelong and  
Continuing Education  
2020



# INTRODUCTION

This module has been made possible by the Department of Non Formal Education with the assistance from teachers from the Ministry of Primary and Secondary Education (MoPSE) and members of staff from Curriculum Development Technical Services (CDTS). The Ministry of Primary and Secondary Education (MoPSE) remains committed to fulfilling the needs of Open Distance Learning (ODL) through introducing interactive ODL materials. Emphasis is given to providing improved access and quality Education to every non formal learner bridging the gap between time and space as guided by the learning areas' syllabus. This will subsequently contribute to bringing about meaningful transformation in the lives of many Zimbabwean learners. We hope that this module will inspire you to study and develop lifelong skills which will make you imbued with values, ethics and a sense of national identity as a Zimbabwean.

# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The Ministry of Primary and Secondary Education wishes to acknowledge the following for their valued contribution in the production of this Non Formal Education Level 2 History Module.

- Mr. Tagara Curriculum Development and Technical Services Coordinator
- Mrs. Msengezi- Mashango V( MPO History ) Curriculum Development and Technical Services
- Mr Nyawasha Teacher St Pauls Musami High
- Mrs. J Chinhavi Teacher Chinorumba High
- Mrs. G Masiyiwa Teacher Dzivarasekwa 1 High
  
- Zimbabwe School Examinations Council (ZIMSEC)
  
- United Nations Children’s Emergency Fund (UNICEF)

# How to use this module?

As you start this journey of acquiring a qualification in Ordinary Level History through open distance learning, it is critical that you understand the need to manage your study time and balance it with your day-to-day activities. This module will provide you with the basic material to assist you towards your public examinations in History. This module has been subdivided into two volumes, that is, Volume 1 Volume 2. You are advised to study Volume 1 first before going to Volume 2.

Wish you the best!

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	i
Acknowledgements	ii
How to use this module	iii
<b>UNIT 13: DICTATORSHIP IN ITALY (1919-1945)</b>	<b>1</b>
13.1 Problems faced by Italy after The First World War	2
13.2 Mussolini's background	5
13.3 Features of Fascism	5
13.4 Mussolini's rise to power	6
13.5 Mussolini's domestic policy	9
13.6 Mussolini's foreign policy	14
<b>UNIT 14: DICTATORSHIP IN GERMANY (1919-1945)</b>	<b>24</b>
14.1 Hitler's early life	26
14.2 Factors to his rise	28
14.3 Hitler's consolidation of power (Domestic policies)	32
14.4 Foreign Policies Aims	40
14.5 Hitler's foreign policies	40
<b>UNIT 15: THE SECOND WORLD WAR (1939-1945)</b>	<b>50</b>
15.1 Causes of the Second World War	51
15.2 Events of the Second World War	59
15.3 Results of the Second World War	68
<b>UNIT 16: THE COLD WAR (1948-1991)</b>	<b>80</b>
16.1 Concept of the Cold War	82
16.2 Reasons for the Cold War	84
16.3 Manifestations of the Cold War	88
16.4 Détente period of the Cold War	93
16.5 End of the Cold War	96
16.6 Effects of the Cold War	97

<b>UNIT 17: THE RUSSIAN REVOLUTION (1905-1940)</b>	<b>109</b>
17.1 Background to the Russian Revolution	110
17.2 Causes of the Russian Revolution	112
17.3 Stages of the Russian Revolution	116
17.4 USSR Economic and Social Transformation	120
17.5 Effects of the Russian Revolution	125
<b>UNIT 18: COMMUNISM IN CHINA (1949-1976) AND CUBA</b>	<b>135</b>
18.1 Background to the Chinese Revolution	136
18.2 Events of the Chinese Revolution	137
18.3 Results of the Chinese Revolution	145
18.4 Background to the Cuban Revolution	145
18.5 Reasons for the Cuban Revolution	145
18.6 Events of the Cuban Revolution	146
18.7 Results of the Cuban Revolution	147
<b>UNIT 19: REGIONAL COOPERATION</b>	<b>157</b>
19.1 The Frontline States	158
19.2 Southern African Development Co-ordination Conference (SADCC 1980)	165
19.3 Southern African Development Community (SADC 1992)	169
19.4 The Organisation of African Unity (OAU 1963)	178
19.5 African Union (AU 2002)	187
<b>UNIT 20: INTERNATIONAL COOPERATION</b>	<b>205</b>
20.1 Commonwealth of Nations	207
20.2 Non-Aligned Movement	213
20.3 United Nations (1945-)	217
20.4 World Conference Summit	230

# UNIT 13: DICTATORSHIP IN ITALY (1919-1945)

13.1 Problems faced by Italy after the First World War

13.2 Mussolini's background

13.3 Features of Fascism

13.4 Mussolini's rise to power

13.5 Mussolini's domestic policy

13.6 Mussolini's foreign policy

## Introduction

We hope that you still recall that Italy fought in the First World War on the side of the victorious allies. However, she was greatly disappointed in the peace that followed when she did not get the territories that she had been promised by the allies when she joined the war. The war had left Italy in many problems and there was chaos in Italy. Benito Mussolini and his Fascist party took advantage of the chaotic situation in Italy to rise to popularity. In this unit we shall look at the rise of Mussolini and the Fascist party to power in Italy. We shall discuss the main features of Fascism and outline Mussolini's steps to power. We shall also evaluate Mussolini's domestic reforms and examine his foreign policies and how they benefited the Italians.



## Objectives

After going through this unit, you should be able to:

- Explain the concept of Fascism
- Outline the inter war problems that led to the rise of dictatorship in Italy
- Describe the domestic and foreign policies of Mussolini



## Key words

As you study this unit you would come across new words such as dictator, totalitarianism, Duce, fascism, democracy and propaganda whose meanings are as follows:

- **Dictator** - a ruler who has complete power over a country.
- **Totalitarianism** - a dictatorial system of government in which the leader or ruling political party is in charge of everything in the state and does not allow other parties to exist.
- **Duce** - the Italian term referring to a Fascist leader.
- **Fascism** - a unique sort of capitalism, in which all industrial and political activities are controlled by the state.
- **Democracy** - a form of government for the people, by the people and of the people. The government is elected by the people to represent their wishes.
- **Propaganda** - a political lie.



## Time

You are supposed to spend 10 hours on this unit.



## Study skills

You are advised to read thoroughly every aspect on this unit and attempt all activities given. Refer to provided answers upon challenges and research further on the topic.

### 13.1 Problems faced by Italy after World War 1

We hope you noted that Italy was involved in the First World War from your previous topics in this module. You may also have noted that Italy faced a lot of problems after the First World War and these are classified into political, social and economic problems.

Now let us focus on the problems Italy faced after the First World War in detail.

### 13.1.1 Political problems Italy faced after the First World War

Political problems refer to the problems which have to do with the system of government. Let us discuss them in detail.

There were too many political parties in Italy and this caused confusion in parliament for example Fascist party, Communist party, Socialists, Liberals, Catholic Centre Party and Nationalists. Brigandage and lawlessness also characterised life of Italians. In Italy there were also strikes which were rampant. Demonstrations continued and weak governments were formed. There was also fear of communism, so the government depended on the Fascists to end this. The country was also characterised by misunderstandings between the church and the state. Italy also experienced high rate of disorder and the government was unpopular because the country had gained very little territories after the First World War. Italians also had disgruntlements over the Treaty of Versailles. There were also too many changes of governments and prime ministers. Existence of many governments led to the formation of private armies by political parties for example black shirts, red shirts, and blue shirts. Italy was also characterised by street fights especially during elections.

### 13.1.2 Social problems

Now let us focus on the problems that had to do with the way people lived and interacted, that is social problems.

There was extreme poverty and hunger in Italy. Another social problem was of starvation which affected many Italians. In Italy there were also fierce riots due to hunger especially in the south. Land seizure by the peasants in the south was another problem burdening the Italians. Low living standards and shortage of land was another challenge faced by Italy. There was brigandage in most parts of Italy. Many Italian people were illiterate-78%. Prostitution was rampant in towns like Milan and Rome. There was an outbreak of diseases for example TB, malaria, typhoid and influenza. Many women were widows and also many children were orphaned .There were also poor medical facilities. Street fights were also witnessed during elections for example between the Black shirts (fascists) and Redshirts (communists).

### 13.1.3 Economic problems

Now let us focus on the economic problems Italy faced after the First World War. Economy refers to the way a state runs its finances and investments. Therefore economic problems refer to problems associated with the state's finances and investments.

There were strikes and high rate of unemployment. Italians also faced high rate of inflation as the lira lost its value leading to rise of prices. Banks were also closed. There was low production in industries which resulted in shortage of goods for example steel and wheat. There were also demonstrations and lockouts. Italy faced decline in trade especially foreign trade; exports were low while imports were high. There was also seizure of factories by workers. The payment of war debts by Italy to the USA was also another problem. The government was bankrupt and taxes were very high. There was corruption in the civil service and this made the government to lose revenue.



#### Activity 13.1

We hope that you are following. Now go through this activity on the problems Italy faced after World War 1.

1. List 5 social problems Italy faced after World War 1.
2. Outline the economic problems Italy faced after World War 1.

How did you find this activity? We hope you found it interesting and exciting. Here are some of the suggested answers to activity 13.1.

#### 1. Social problems Italy faced after World War 1

- Hunger
- Starvation
- High crime rate
- High unemployment
- Brigandage
- Poverty
- Prostitution

## 2. Economic problems

- Inflation and unemployment
- Strikes
- There were lockouts
- Banks were closed
- Taxes were very high
- Demonstrations and low production in industries
- There was a very low agricultural production
- The payment of war debts by Italy to USA
- There was bankruptcy of the government
- Corruption in the civil service.

## 13.2 Mussolini's background

Now let's go on to look at the background of Mussolini. Everyone in life can be traced to his early life and background. This applies to everyone especially popular figures such as politicians, pastors, teachers among other professions. For you to understand this answer these questions –Who are you? How old are you? Where do you come from? Where are your parents? All your answers to these questions are your background and it has an impact on your character and ambitions in future just like what happened to Mussolini. With your own background, now study Mussolini's.

Mussolini was born in 1883, at Dovia in Romagna. He was the son of a socialist blacksmith and a school mistress. He came from a poor background and once worked as a stonemason's mate, butcher man, primary school teacher and a journalist. He also fought during the First World War. He formed the Fascist party in 1919 with the support of many ex-soldiers and nationalists.

## 13.3 Features of fascism

- Extreme hatred of communism
- Strong hatred of democracy
- Glorification of the military
- Banning of strikes
- Banning of trade unions
- Hero worshiping the leader

- Extreme dictatorship
- Law and order
- Looking down upon women
- A one party state
- A close link between the government and the businessmen
- Extreme patriotism
- Extreme racism
- A one party state
- Extreme hatred of Jews
- Banning of elections
- Censorship of media
- Extreme nationalism

## 13.4 Mussolini's rise to power

Having learnt about Mussolini's background, now let us focus on his rise to power. You have to note that his background contributed to his rise to power. Mussolini formed the Fascist party in 1919 in Milan. He took advantage of the economic, social and political problems in Italy after World War 1. He also criticised the Paris Peace Settlement after Italy failed to gain territory from the Paris Peace Treaties. Mussolini promised to end Italy's problems and also promised to restore the Italian race's pride. Mussolini formed a private army called Black Shirts which attacked the youths and ex-soldiers. The Black Shirts, Mussolini's private army used violence for example murder, torture, beating, forcing enemies to eat live frogs and to drink castor oil especially during campaigns. He supported the seizure of factories by workers between 1919 and 1920 but later he opposed it. He also supported business people in January 1921. Marches and parades attracted the youths and the ex-soldiers. The Black Shirts were able to crush the 1922 strike. The Fascist Party took part in elections in 1919, 1920, 1921 and 1922 and in these elections support for the Fascist Party was very little. In 1922 the party only got 35 seats out of 535 in parliament, hence Mussolini resorted to violence and force to rise to power. He also rose to power because his party was fortunate to be invited by the then Prime Minister Giolitti into government in 1921. The Fascists constantly attacked the Socialists and Communists when they held meetings. Through the use of force Mussolini organised the October 1922 March in Rome and about 50 000 Blackshirts marched to Rome armed. Mussolini travelled by train from Milan to Rome and he organised the march after demanding

to take over the government saying; "Either the government should be given to us or we shall take it". After the government failure to respond in his favour he organised the March on Rome where the Black Shirts demanded Mussolini to be appointed as Prime Minister. Facta, the Prime Minister, wanted to use the Police and the army to disperse the Black shirts. King Victor Emmanuel III refused to give orders to fight the Black shirts, Facta was angry and resigned. King Victor Emmanuel III invited Mussolini to be the new Prime Minister and to form a new government, the next day after the March on Rome. Mussolini accepted to be the new Prime Minister and also formed a new cabinet.

### 13.4.1 The reasons why the March on Rome was a success

In life everything happens for a reason. For example you have various reasons for your studies as an ODL learner. Now let us focus on why the March on Rome was successful and why King Victor Emmanuel III invited Mussolini to form a government.

The King Victor Emmanuel III doubted whether the army would agree to fight the Black Shirts, since the black Shirts were mostly ex-soldiers. One of the king's cousins, the Duke of Aosta, was a fanatic of Fascism. King Victor Emmanuel III wanted a strong government. The King also wanted discipline, law and order. The Queen mother Margherita was a strong supporter of Mussolini in 1922. The Fascists was anti Communist. The rich and powerful members in Italy supported Mussolini for example industrialists and factory owners for fear of communism.

### 13.4.2 Factors that helped Mussolini to rise to power from 1919-1922

Now let us focus on the factors which helped Mussolini to rise to power. These were:

- Use of violence
- Use of force
- Intimidation
- Forcing enemies to eat live frogs or toads
- Opponents were forced to drink castor oil
- Homes were burnt

- Offices and Communists' newspapers were burnt
- The Black shirts disturbed meetings and rallies of opponents
- Use of parades which were very attractive
- Use of propaganda
- Mussolini was a good orator, he had a good skill to address supporters
- Organising noisy rallies
- Payment of small wages or allowances to the Black Shirts
- The Fascists Party participated in elections of 1919, 1920. 1921 and 1922.
- Fascists marches and parades attracted the youths and ex-soldiers
- Mussolini's invitation by King Victor Emmanuel III to become Prime Minister in October 1922
- Political, social and economic problems frustrated the people and Mussolini promised to end their problems

## Tips

Mussolini's personality as a good orator who was able to address his supporters acted as a catalyst to his rise to power. He took advantage of the social, political and economic problems to gain support by promising to end them.



## Activity 13.2

From the rise of Dictatorship in Italy up to Mussolini's rise to power, attempt the following questions

1. List any 5 features of Italian Fascism
2. List any 5 methods used by Mussolini to rise to power
3. Identify any 5 factors that led to the success of the Rome March of 1922

How was activity 13.2? Was it challenging? Let us hope you found it fair and interesting.

Here are some of the suggested answers to activity 13.2.

1. Features of fascism

- Banning of trade unions
- Extreme hatred of communism
- Strong hatred of democracy
- Glorification of the military
- No strikes
- Banning of trade unions
- Extreme dictatorship
- A one party state

2. Methods used by Mussolini in his rise to power

- Use of violence
- Use of force
- Intimidation
- Forcing enemies to eat live frogs
- Use of propaganda
- Use of attractive parades
- Organising noisy rallies

3. Factors which led to the success of the March on Rome of 1922

- The king Victor Emmanuel III feared a civil war
- The king doubted Facta's ability to crush the Black Shirts
- The king Victor Emmanuel III doubted whether the army would fight the Black Shirts
- The fascists were anti-communists
- The queen mother Margherita was a strong supporter of Mussolini in 1922
- The king Victor Emmanuel also wanted discipline, law and order

## 13.5 Mussolini's domestic policy 1922-1939

Do you remember problems Italy faced after the First World War, Mussolini's background and his rise to power? If not revisit these subtopics. It is important to link them with Mussolini's aims in his domestic policy. As a tip, domestic refers to anything done within the country. In the following subtopics we are going to focus on Mussolini's aims and activities in his domestic policy.

### 13.5.1 Mussolini's Domestic Aims

- i. To crush communism
- ii. To maintain law and order
- iii. To crush democracy
- iv. To make Italy a dictatorship
- v. To eradicate poverty
- vi. To create a one party state
- vii. To create employment
- viii. To rearm Italy
- ix. To end inflation
- x. To make Italy self-sufficient
- xi. To protect family life
- xii. To restore Italy's pride and greatness
- xiii. To develop Italy's infrastructure
- xiv. To make Italy great, respected and feared
- xv. To revive Italy's ancient Rome greatness

### 13.5.2 Mussolini's Domestic Policy

Now let's go through Mussolini's Domestic Policy in detail linking with his aims in his domestic policy and the problems Italy faced after World War 1 assessing whether he was able to end these problems.

Mussolini was able to introduce and establish dictatorship in Italy. He was able to consolidate his power; he gave himself the title "IL Duce" meaning the leader. Slogans were used and it was a must for the youths to chant them for example .... "Mussolini is always right", 'Obey, Fight, Believe', 'A minute in battle is equal to a life in Peace'... 'Nothing in History has been won without bloodshed'. Mussolini controlled the most important government posts as President of the Fascist Grand Council, Prime Minister of Foreign Affairs, Minister of Home Affairs, Minister of Corporations, Minister of Army, Navy and Air force and Commander in Chief of the Militia. Other parties were banned hence Italy became a One Party State. Elections were also banned. Violence was the order of the day for example torture and murder. Ministers and mayors were appointed and dismissed by Mussolini. He created a secret police called OVRA in 1927 as the eye and the ear to the Fascist Party. Through the OVRA, opponents were arrested and jailed and the media was strictly censored these include radio, television, newspapers, magazines, posters, theatre and film. Education was strictly controlled by Mussolini, teachers were forced to wear uniforms, and textbooks were rewritten to praise war and the Italian race. Biology textbooks were rewritten to show that the Italian race was superior. Teachers, lecturers and professors were closely watched. Teachers had to take an oath of allegiance or loyalty to Mussolini. Students had to spy their teachers and parents and report them to the party. Mussolini censored all media strictly in January 1925. He banned all Anti-Fascist newspapers and magazines. Examples of media censored are; newspapers, magazines, radio, art, films, cinemas and televisions. Workers lost their rights since strikes, demonstrations and lockouts were banned. Trade unions were also banned and the workers' unions were replaced by corporations controlled by Fascist Party. Industrialists were now controlled by Mussolini who told them what to produce, quantity and time. Workers were given free Sundays, cheap tours and paid annual leave, pensions, insurance etc. Mussolini fixed rents, prices, wages and exchange rates to control inflation. This was called the "**Battle of Lira**" he fixed the exchange rate of 1 pound to 90 lira. He also began the "**Battle of Births**" to increase the population, aimed at increasing manpower and the army. Mothers with many children were given awards. Bachelors were heavily taxed while the newlyweds were given loans. Divorce was banned; he also controlled prostitution by introducing heavy fines and controlled night life. Abortion and contraceptives were banned. Youth were forced to join the Fascist youth organization. They were taught to praise Mussolini, to follow orders and the importance of war, discipline and slogans. Religion was controlled. Mussolini signed the Lateran Treaty with the Pope in 1929 February. This treaty ended conflict between the church and the state. Pope

Pius XI and Mussolini agreed on the following terms:

- i. Catholicism was made a state religion
- ii. The Pope was given the right to rule the Vatican City
- iii. Compensation was given to the Pope for the property confiscated during the Italian unification in 1871
- iv. The church's land was to be returned
- v. Taxes on the church were to be stopped
- vi. Religious education was to be taught in all schools
- vii. The teaching of religious education was made compulsory
- viii. The crucifix was to be hanged in all classrooms/ schools
- ix. Measures were taken to make divorce difficult
- x. Catholic organisations were free to operate; for example Catholic scouts
- xi. The church recognised Mussolini's rule
- xii. Mussolini got the Pope and Catholic support
- xiii. The treaty ended the long standing conflict between the state and the Church.

## REMEMBER:

Most historians see the Lateran Treaty as Mussolini's most lasting and important achievement.

Mussolini got support by reducing unemployment. Ex-soldiers and youths got jobs in the army, navy and air force. He also created public works programmes to create jobs and improve infrastructure. Roads were widened and Bridges were constructed. Motorways were tarred (highways connecting main towns). Railways were electrified, trains began to run on time. Building of blocks of flats, schools, hospitals, stadiums, canals and dams was organised. Mussolini also introduced the **"Battle of Wheat"**, the aim was to make Italy self sufficient. The marshes were drained to create more land such as the Pontine Marshes near Rome. Wheat farmers were given loans by the government and inputs (seeds, fertilisers, tractors, pesticides). Good farming methods like Irrigation were promoted. Olive plantations were cleared to create more land

for wheat. Wheat production doubled. It also reduced imports of wheat. Mussolini promoted heavy industry with subsidies for example iron, steel, car manufacturing and weapons. He gave loans to the Fiat Company which manufacture car. He introduced the programme to refine oil at Bari and Leghorn. He expanded iron and steel industry. He expanded the textile industry and also expanded the aviation industry. Hydroelectricity power stations were built to produce more electricity. Mussolini also controlled sports. He encouraged Italians to win to show that Fascism was superior. Soccer was strictly controlled and Boxing was sponsored by state. News about the Italian boxers was heard on the radios, newspapers and TVs. Tennis players were forced to wear Fascist badges and give the Fascist salute.



### Activity 13.3

1. List any five government posts held by Mussolini
2. Name 5 media censored by Mussolini
3. List 5 public works created by Mussolini

How did you find activity 13.3? Hope you found it easy and you were able to present your answers in point form since it consists of part (a) questions

#### 1. **Five (5) government posts held by Mussolini**

- Prime minister
- Minister of Foreign affairs
- Minister of Home affairs
- Minister of Corporations
- President of the Fascist Grand Council

#### 2. **Five (5) media censored by Mussolini**

- Radio
- Television
- Newspapers
- Magazines

- Films
- Art
- Cinema

### **3. Five (5) public works created by Mussolini**

- Construction of bridges
- Construction of blocks of flats
- Construction of canals
- Construction of roads
- Construction of railway lines
- Building of motorways
- Construction of schools
- Construction of hospitals
- Construction of sports stadiums

## **13.6 Mussolini's Foreign Policy**

In 1923 Mussolini invaded the Greek Island of Corfu. In 1924 he signed an agreement with Yugoslavia and gained Fiume for Italy. In 1924 he signed treaties of friendship with Greece, Albania and Hungary. Mussolini attended the Lorcano Conference of 1925 and signed the Lorcano Pact of 1925. In 1925 he signed the Kellogg-Briand Pact, not to use war again when a problem arises. In 1925 Mussolini absorbed Albania economically. In 1933 Mussolini attended the disarmament conference in support of disarmament. In 1934 Mussolini intercepted Hitler's forces in a bid to invade Austria and renew the Anschluss. In 1935 Mussolini signed the Stresa Front with Britain and France and agreed to protect Austria's independence and stop Hitler from violating the Treaty of Versailles. From 1935-36 Mussolini invaded Abyssinia in Ethiopia. Mussolini helped General Franco in the Spanish civil war in 1936. In 1936 Mussolini signed the Rome-Berlin Axis with Hitler. In 1937 he signed the Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis with Hitler and Tojo of Japan to fight against Communism. In 1937 Mussolini visited Germany. In 1939 Mussolini invade Albania .In 1937 Mussolini signed the Pact of Steel with Hitler to assist each other in the event of war.



## Activity 13.4

1a) List any 5 aims of Mussolini in his foreign Policy

b) Outline Mussolini's foreign Policy

c) To what extent did the Italians benefit from Mussolini's foreign policy?

How did you find this activity? Did you notice that it is a typical examination question out of 25 and in three parts? Were you able to list on part (a), write in continuous form on part (b) and judge on part (c)? If so very good, if not keep on trying making use of some of the suggested answers on the model answer below.

a) Five (5) aims of Mussolini in his foreign policy

- To put Italy on the world map
- To gain prestige
- To make a name for himself
- To make a name for his country, Italy
- To eliminate communism
- To spread Fascism in Europe and the world
- To create abundant living space for the Italia

b) Mussolini's foreign policy was as follows; in 1923 Mussolini invaded the Greek Island of Corfu. 1924 he signed an agreement with Yugoslavia and gained Fiume for Italy. In 1924 he signed treaties of friendship with Greece, Albania and Hungary. Mussolini attended the Lorcano Conference of 1925 and signed the Lorcano Pact of 1925. In 1925 he signed the Kellogg-Briand Pact, not to use war again when a problem arises. In 1925 Mussolini absorbed Albania economically. In 1933 Mussolini attended the disarmament conference in support of disarmament. In 1934 Mussolini intercepted Hitler's forces in a bid to invade Austria and renew the Anschluss. In 1935 Mussolini signed the Stresa Front with Britain and France and agreed to protect Austria's independence and stop Hitler from violating the Treaty of Versailles. From 1935-36 Mussolini invaded Abyssinia in Ethiopia. Mussolini helped General Franco in the Spanish civil war in 1936. In 1936 Mussolini signed the Rome-Berlin Axis with Hitler. In 1937 he signed the Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis with Hitler and Tojo of Japan to fight against Communism. In 1937 Mussolini visited Germany. In 1939 Mussolini

invades Albania. In 1937 Mussolini signed the Pact of Steel with Hitler to assist each other in the event of war.

c) To a larger extent Italians benefited much from Mussolini's foreign policies. Italy gained prestige after invading Abyssinia in 1935. Italy also gained living space after invading Abyssinia and Albania. Italy also gained raw materials from Albania and Abyssinia. Unemployment was curbed through employment as soldiers. Italy also gained friendship through signing treaties of friendship with Greece, Hungary and Albania. However to a lesser extent there were also non benefits to the people of Italy, for example loss of life during invasions and battles. Creation of enemies because of invasions, for example, the invasion of Abyssinia. Many women became widows due to wars and also many children became orphans.

## Reflection

From the whole unit, try to remember the following- how political, social and economic problems Italy faced after World War 1, led to the rise of Mussolini to power, features of Fascism, methods used by Mussolini to rise to power, his domestic and foreign policies.

## Summary

You have noted that after World War 1 Italy faced political, social and economic problems. There was high inflation, extreme unemployment poverty and starvation among others. There were also many political parties and instability which all led to the rise of Mussolini to power using propaganda, violence and mostly the March on Rome. You have also noted that Mussolini's domestic policy revived industries, the economy, education and Italy's infrastructure. Mussolini's foreign policy brought glory to Italy through military supremacy conquering Albania and Abyssinia of Ethiopia. However you should not ignore that Mussolini's foreign policy was also contributory to the outbreak of World War 2.

## Reading list

1. Step ahead history, student's book 4,(2011) , Sam Mavuru and Karukai Nyanhanda-Ratsauka, Longman
2. The African Heritage, book 4 (2003) , H Moyana and M Sibanda, Zimbabwe Publishing House

## Assignment

- a) List five professions held by Mussolini (5)
- b) Describe Mussolini's domestic policy (12)
- c) To what extent did the Italians benefit from Mussolini's domestic policy? (8)

## Tips

Remember how Mussolini succeeded to introduce Fascism in Italy. Take note of his domestic and foreign policy and how Italians benefited from Mussolini's policies and rule. In your assignment consider the negative and positive impact of Mussolini's domestic policy.

## Assessment Test

- 1a) List 5 methods used by Mussolini to rise to power (5)
- b) Describe Mussolini's March on Rome of 1922 (12)
- c) To what extent did the March on Rome lead to Mussolini's rise to power? (8)

## Suggested answers to the assessment test

- 1a) 5 methods used by Mussolini to rise to power
  - Use of propaganda
  - Use of attractive parades
  - Use of violence
  - Beating of opponents
  - Forcing opponents to drink castor oil

b) Mussolini's March on Rome of 1922

- Mussolini organised the October 1922 March On Rome
- About 50 000 Black shirts marched to Rome armed
- Mussolini travelled by train from Milan to Rome and he organised the march after demanding to take over the government saying; "Either the government should be given to us or we shall take it".
- After the government failure to respond in his favour he organised the March on Rome where the Black Shirts demanded Mussolini to be appointed as Prime Minister.
- Facta, the Prime Minister, wanted to use the Police and the army to disperse the Black shirts.
- King Victor Emmanuel III refused to give orders to fight the Black shirts
- Facta was angry and resigned
- King Victor Emmanuel III invited Mussolini to be the new Prime Minister and to form a new government
- The next day after the March on Rome
- Mussolini accepted to be the new Prime Minister and also formed a new cabinet.

1a) To what extent did the March on Rome lead to Mussolini's rise to power? (8)

To a large extent the March on Rome led to Mussolini's rise to power since

- It led to the resignation of Facta who was Prime Minister
- It also made Mussolini to be invited by the King Victor Emmanuel III to form a government
- It also made Mussolini to be appointed as the new Prime Minister
- It made Mussolini to form a new cabinet

However to a lesser extent other factors also contributed such as

- use of violence
- force
- propaganda

## Sample examination questions

1. a) List 5 political parties in Italy by 1922 (5)  
b) Describe the political problems faced by Italy between 1919 and 1922 (12)  
c) To what extent did these political problems lead to Mussolini's rise to power?
2. a) List 5 aims of Mussolini's domestic policy(5)  
b) Describe measures taken by Mussolini to consolidate his power in Italy between 1922 and 1939 (8)  
c) To what extent did the Italian benefit from Mussolini's consolidation of power? (8)
3. a) List any five aims of Mussolini's foreign policy(5)  
b) outline Mussolini's foreign policy  
c) to what extent did the Italians benefit from Mussolini's foreign policy (8)

How did you find the sample examination questions? Were they challenging? We urge you to constantly attempt them in preparation for your final examinations. Take note of some of the suggested answers below:

- a) List 5 political parties in Italy by 1922 (5)
  - Nationalist party (Blue shirts)
  - Communist party (Red shirts)

- Liberal party (Grey shirts)
- Popular party (Catholic party)
- Socialist party (Red Guards)

b) Describe the political problems faced by Italy between 1919 and 1922 (12)

- There were too many political parties in Italy
- This caused confusion in parliament for example fascist party, communist party, socialists, liberals, catholic centre party and nationalists
- There was brigandage
- Lawlessness in Italy
- Strikes in Italy which were rampant
- Demonstrations were rampant
- Weak unstable governments
- Fear of communism, so the government dependency on fascists to end this
- There were also misunderstandings between the church and the state
- There was high rate of disorder in Italy
- The government was unpopular because the country had gained very little territories after
- The First World War
- Disgruntlements over the treaty of Versailles
- The system of proportional representation led to formation of many small parties
- Too many changes of governments or prime ministers
- There was formation of private armies by political parties for example, black shirts , red shirts, grey shirts and blue shirts
- Street fights especially during elections
- Lawlessness in Italy

c) To what extent did these political problems lead to Mussolini's rise to power?(8)

To a large extent the political problems led to the rise of Mussolini to power in 1922 because:

- Mussolini took advantage of these political problems to win the Italians' support
- Mussolini took advantage of too many political parties in Italy and promised solutions to the
- Italians
- Many politicians and governments in Italy were not interested in solving the problems in
- Italy, this made Mussolini to win support of the Italians
- Mussolini's March on Rome also posed a civil war and forced King Victor Emmanuel 111 to
- Invite him to form a government and made him Prime Minister.

However to a lesser extent other factors also led to Mussolini's rise to power

- Unemployment was very high
- Mussolini's ability to use propaganda in his campaigns
- Poverty, hunger, strikes and food shortages also led to Mussolini's rise to power as he promised to end them.

a) List five aims of Mussolini in his domestic policy [5]

- To make Italy politically stable
- To create a strong Italian economy
- To make Italy a great power once again
- To make Italy self sufficient
- To ban trade unions
- To ban strikes

- b) Describe measures taken by Mussolini to consolidate his power in Italy between 1922 and 1939 [12]
- Mussolini passed the Acerbo law in 1923 which enabled him to get majority seats in Parliament
  - Mussolini eliminated opponents, Giacomo Matteotti was killed after indicating that the fascists had used force in the 1924 elections
  - He introduced censorship of all media for example, radios, films, magazines, newspapers, cinema and theatre were put under tight control in 1925
  - In 1926 Mussolini banned all opposition political parties
  - He went on to create a secret police [OVRA] which he used to hunt and silence his enemies
  - In 1928, he set up the Fascist Grand Council to choose members of Parliament
  - In 1928, he also banned elections
  - In 1929, he signed the Lateran treaty with the Pope and Catholicism a state religion
  - Mussolini also put education under state control
  - Textbooks were re-written to glorify Mussolini
  - Teachers were to take an oath of allegiance and to wear uniforms
  - Mussolini banned trade unions, strikes, demonstrations and lockouts
  - He also established a corporate state and made himself the Minister of corporations
  - He also made himself Minister of Home Affairs, Foreign Affairs, Commander in Chief of the Militia and Minister of Army, Navy and Air force
  - Mussolini adopted the title IL-Duce [the leader]
  - Mussolini ruled by decree that is by command
  - The Black Shirts terrorised people especially during campaigns by beating their opponents and forcing them to drink castor oil and to swallow live toads

- Mussolini suppressed democracy especially denying people the right to vote for Members of Parliament
- Hence Mussolini created totalitarianism in Italy since everything was controlled by him.

c) To what extent did the Italians benefit from Mussolini's consolidation of power?  
(8)

To a large extent the Italians were affected negatively by Mussolini's consolidation of power in Italy since:

- They now lived in perpetual fear
- Their civil and political freedom was suppressed
- Italians were also affected negatively since they were denied the right to vote for Members of Parliament
- The Italians no longer expressed themselves freely
- Banning of trade unions and strikes was unfair to the workers who were now exploited under the corporate state

However to a lesser extent the Italians benefited from Mussolini's consolidation of power since

- His dictatorship ensured peace, order and stability in Italy
- The banning of trade unions, strikes, demonstrations and lockouts led to the creation of a peaceful environment which promoted economic growth.

## References

Mavuru, S and Nyanhanda-Ratsauka (2011). Step ahead history, student's book 4, (2011) , Longman

Moyana, H and Sibanda, M. (2003). The African Heritage, book 4 ,Zimbabwe Publishing House

# UNIT 14: DICTATORSHIP IN GERMANY (1919-1939)

- 14.1 Hitler's early life
- 14.2 Factors to his rise
- 14.3 Hitler's consolidation of power (Domestic policies)
- 14.4 Foreign Policies Aims
- 14.5 Hitler's foreign policies

## Introduction

The First World War led to the rise of new political parties and new types of leadership in various European states. During the First World War, Germany had fought on the side of the Central Powers such as Austria-Hungary and Turkey and she was defeated. We hope that you still remember that Germany was greatly humiliated at the Paris Peace Conference and the Treaty of Versailles. We also hope that you can name some of the political parties that developed in Zimbabwe. In this unit we are going to discuss the rise of Nazism in Germany under the leadership of Adolf Hitler. We shall discuss the main features of Nazism and the rise of Hitler to power in Germany. We shall trace Hitler's steps to power and his consolidation of power, looking at his domestic and foreign policies. We hope that you can still recall that between 1918 and 1933 Germany was known as the Weimar Republic and that the Weimar government was very unpopular. The weaknesses of the Weimar Republic contributed to the rise of Hitler.



## Objectives

As an open distance learner, by the end of this tutorial unit, you should be able to:

- define Nazism and identify its features
- describe Hitler's rise to power
- analyse Hitler's domestic policies
- explain Hitler's Foreign policies



## Keywords

As you read through this tutorial unit, there are certain key words that you should be able to sing and share with your friends. The list includes the following terms:

**Nazism** – a right-wing system of government with extreme nationalistic beliefs. The NAZI party was formed by the German workers.

**Dictatorship** - system of leadership in which the leader has no consultation but just gives his ideas

**Propaganda** - false or exaggerated information used to win a political cause or point of view

**Reparations** – compensation for war damage paid by a defeated country

**Domestic policy** - is a rule that has to do with home policies of any nation

**Democracy** - a free and fair process where people express themselves without fear

**Foreign policy** - how a country relates itself to neighbouring countries or overseas

**Constitution** - a guiding act passed in parliament and accepted by the people on rights

**Self sufficiency** - ability to satisfy your needs without outside help

**Aggression** - an act of attacking someone like a country



## Time

The unit requires you to spend 10 hours of reading as well as attempting a 2hour examination practice session.



## Study skills

By the end of this unit you should be well equipped with the skills of research and interpretation as you research on the various factors which lead to the rise of Hitler and interpret the various pictures and cartoons depicting social, political and economic problems in various European countries with Germany in particular. Explain and make

an assessment of the benefits of domestic and foreign policies put in place by various leaders with Hitler in particular. Evaluate the impact of each policy in national and international relations.

## 14.1 Hitler's early life

Everyone in life can be traced to his early life and origins especially when they become popular figures like politicians, musicians, and priests among other jobs. You also have a life history same as mine. You can begin by narrating your life history to your friend. In this section of the unit we are going to discuss about Adolf Hitler. The following is his brief early life history:

Hitler was born in 1889 and his father was a customs official. Academically he was a failure, he failed to obtain a normal school leavers certificate. From an early age, Hitler hated the Jews and the Slavs whom he believed corrupted the German race. At the age of eighteen he went to Vienna in Austria (capital city of Austria) to try and enter the school of Art but still he failed. Hitler blamed the Jews for his failure. During World War 1 Hitler fought bravely in the Germany army which earned him the rank of corporal and he received the Iron Cross (medal) for his bravery. He was temporarily blinded by gas and was hospitalised. Whilst in the hospital Hitler learnt of the Germany's defeat in the war. He did not accept the defeat of Germany easily and he concluded that the defeat was due to the traitors which were the Jews, Slavs and named them 'The November Criminals'.

### 14.1.1 The formation of the Germany workers party

We all have an idea of different political parties and their formations in our country. Which one can you recall its formation and leadership from our form three work? Today we are shifting to Germany workers party which was formed in 1919 and Hitler joined the party as the seventh member. He quickly rose through the ranks to become the Party president by 1921. The Party changed its name to the National Socialist Germany Party and later the NAZI Party. The party symbol was known as the Swastika which meant Germany will never surrender. (To put the swastika symbol here) The NAZI party came up with a programme of 25 points and the most important ones being the cancellation of the Versailles Treaty, creation of a greater Germany, nationalisation of the German economy, withdrawal of citizenship rights from Jews

and their expulsion, strengthening of the central government of Germany and to embark on a rearmament programme.

### 14.1.2 The Munich Putsch of 1923

#### NOTE IT:

Hopefully from the previous section you recall the March on Rome by Mussolini. What did we say was its importance to the Italians? Here we are considering the Munich putsch by Hitler and we would like you to note that it was Hitler's most effective way of gaining power and consolidating it.

In 1923 Hitler and his Storm Troopers (an army unit) tried to seize control of Munich. They were encouraged by the harsh economic conditions which had been caused by the French occupation of the Ruhr province. The Munich Putsch was Hitler's way of emulating Mussolini's March to Rome in 1922. Unfortunately Hitler's attempt was unsuccessful and Hitler was arrested and imprisoned for five years. However he only served for nine months. During his trial Hitler used the opportunity to bring attention to people by making strong anti-government speeches. In one of his speeches he was quoted 'The court will judge as Germans who wanted only the good of their people and fatherland and to fight and die'. While in prison Hitler wrote his book called *Mein Kampf*, which meant "My Struggle". It was a mixture of his auto-biography and how he hated the Jews and the communists. In this book he explained how he was going to solve Germany's problems. In the book he emphasized on the need for the creation of a large Germany living room, also known as *Lebensraum*, destruction of France, purification of German race (Aryan) by eliminating the Jews from German, creation of a strong leadership which would make Germany the lord of the earth and cancellation of the Versailles Treaty. Later on *The Mein Kampf* became the NAZI bible. After his release from prison Hitler embarked on a programme of mobilising support for the NAZI. Between 1925 -28 Hitler strengthened his control of the NAZI Party which then developed from a local to a national party. He won the support of many Germans. In 1933 Hitler was invited to become Chancellor by the then president Hindenburg and on 30 January 1933 he became the chancellor of Germany.

## 14.2. Factors which contributed to the rise of Hitler

### Study Tip on the Rise

In this sub unit on factors which contributed to Hitler's rise to power, our aim is to look at the social, economic and political problems that Germany faced after World War 1 which made Hitler's rise to power possible. These were the problems faced by the Weimar Republic. Hitler took the opportunity to address the needs of Germany's citizens which gave Hitler home support.

### 14.2.1 Economic problems

From our previous study of the domestic policies of Mussolini and the results of the First World War, you may have realised the economic reforms and problems in Italy as well as most European countries. These were the problems that had to do with what could bring food on the table, financial issues. Let us look at the problems faced by Germans.

To start with there was high rate of unemployment which necessitated economic hardship in the post first world war period. The war resulted in about six million Germans being unemployed. Disarmament and closure of industries worsened the unemployment levels. There was also high inflation which was a result of high reparations demanded by the allied powers as compensation to destructions made by Germany to their countries in the war. As a result German government responded by printing paper money. Another dilemma was prices of basic commodities shot up to ten times in 1922 only. Germany's inflation was worsened by the French occupation of the Ruhr valley which affected their industrial production. Decline in Germany's industrial production worsened as industrialists were facing problems of sourcing raw materials and business folded up. Workers received very low wages in Germany. A huge budget deficit was another burden as a result of the effects of the war. The Germany government was facing huge debts and this resulted in the economy being declared bankrupt. The economic depression of 1929 -31 worsened various economic problems. In Germany there was high cost of living as prices of basic commodities went up.

### 14.2.3 Political problems

From our previous discussion on the First World War (unit 10) and Fascism (unit 13), we noted that there was the emergence of new governments and political parties. There was the Weimar Republic in Germany. When the republic came into power, it faced a number of political problems.

There was political instability in Germany since there were numerous quarrels and counter-accusations on what made Germany lose the First World War. There was lack of respect for the government despite democracy having been established in Germany soon after the war. Democracy had no deep roots in Germany. Also there were many political parties and yet there was no single party which had majority in the Reichstag (Parliament). Another problem was the threat of **Communism**. The industrialists and land owners turned to the NAZI party which was preaching against communism. These industrialists gave financial support to the NAZIS. Another problem was outbreak of violence and demonstrations. In Germany there were many revolutionary uprisings such as the 1919 Spartacist (Communist) uprising, the Bavarian revolts and the Freikorps Coup. Political Parties in Germany had their own armies for example Hitler had his own Brown Shirted Storm Detachment and the Storm Troopers which were used to disrupt opposition party meetings. Division on the left wing was another problem with social democrats and Germany Communist Parties which were bitterly divided. Their divisions gave Hitler a chance to gain support of the Germans. The **Coalition** governments in Germany followed each other in quick succession without any gaining the support of the people for example between 1919 and 1933 there were more than twenty governments with each lasting an average of seven months. There was also failure by the government to deal with **anarchy** and chaos in the state. Anarchy and chaos were prevailing in Germany which allowed the NAZI private army and the Storm Troopers to attract the young people who were jobless. There was a general discontentment associated with the Versailles treaty with its humiliating terms to Germany. Many Germans hated the Weimar Republic for accepting the dictated Versailles Treaty. **You can refer to Unit 10 for reflection on the treaty details.**

### 14.2.4 Social problems:

These were the problems that had to do with the way people lived, interacting and what made them associate and feel as Germans as well as promoting the spirit of

nationalism like those we learnt of in the Balkan states. Usually how we interact is of paramount importance. The Germans faced the problem of food shortages as a result of economic hardship and low agricultural production. There was hunger and starvation since there was no employment and less farming preferred to militarism. The most worrisome was wide spread theft as a result of destitution and hyper inflation and also higher levels of unemployment. Prostitution hit Germany hard as widows tried to look after their orphaned children. There was increase in cases of domestic violence as life was always unbearable and families lived in frustrations. There was an outbreak of diseases such as malaria and typhoid which caused death. There was problem of homelessness as most people were left desperate due to war displacements. Corruption was very high especially among the lowly paid government workers. Humiliation after the First World War was another problem as Germany had sought multiple alliances and later facing punishment from the Versailles treaty. Fear of communism among the landlords and industrialists also created enmity between the two groups as it called for classless society .Loss of investments, pensions, insurance as a result of the fall of the currency`s value resulted into many sinking in poverty.



## ACTIVITY 14.1 RESEARCH

Undertake some research on the history of Germany and answer the following question:

Identify parties for the following leaders and write your answers in the spaces provided:

- Hitler.....
- Himmler.....
- Ribbentrop .....
- Von Karh.....
- Goebbels.....
- Goering.....
- Van Roth.....
- Von Schleicher.....

- Rohm .....
- Hendrich .....
- Elkhart.....
- Hess.....

We hope that by now you have some understanding of Fascism in Italy and Nazism in Germany. Can you identify measures taken by Hitler to introduce and strengthen his leadership in Germany?

**TIP:**

There are common features in the rise of Fascism in Italy and Nazism in Germany that you may realise in your study. Write them in your journal.

### 14.2.5 Hitler’s personality as a factor to his rise in power

When we talk of personal skills, these are skills which one is born with like the ability to talk convincingly. In the previous unit we learnt about Benito Mussolini personal skills so as in this unit we look at Adolf Hitler. The two had similar striking skills like being militaristic and being gifted orators. Hitler was a good orator and used his oratory skills to win the support of many disgruntled Germans. He promised a solution to every problem as he popularised the theory of the Aryan race. He maintained that the German race was superior and it was not to be polluted by other races. Hitler emphasized that the Germans were to be masters and not servants and therefore he got majority support. Adolf also popularised ‘the stab in the back’ myth by maintaining that the defeat of Germany was caused by the Jews, Slavs and Communists who stabbed them at the back and so should be severely punished. He also used his oratory skills to attack the Versailles and the weak Weimar Republic and promised to cancel the hated Versailles treaty once he was in power. Hitler’s personality acted as a catalyst to his rise to power as he took advantage of the social, economic and political problems to gain support.



## ACTIVITY 14.2 RESEARCH AND WRITING

There were some groups of people who were persecuted by the Nazi party. Can you explain why the groups given below were persecuted?

- Socialists
- disabled
- Jews
- lawyers
- teachers
- homosexuals
- Catholics
- women
- blacks
- Slavs
- Gypsies
- Communists

### 14.3 Hitler's consolidation of power (Domestic policies)

To consolidate is to strengthen a position taken. We may all feel that we need to make ourselves known by what we do at times. We may not want to lose our statuses and as the result we may try to make our positions strong. Similarly Hitler wanted to establish total control and let us see how he consolidated his power.

#### 14.3.1 The March 1933 elections

When Hitler came to power, the NAZI party had no majority in the Reichstag. Hitler persuaded the president Hindenburg to dissolve the Reichstag and go for new elections. With this it was Hitler's attempt to have a majority in parliament and have total control.

These were Hitler's first elections and in the election campaign was characterised by violence. To threaten and induce fear, Hitler's SA beat up speakers at opposition rallies. A week before elections the Reichstag building caught fire and the Dutch Communist Van De Lube was arrested and charged with arson and he was executed. Although the damage was minimum, Hitler used the incident to discredit the Communists. Hitler and the NAZIs blamed the Communists for the incident and many Communists were arrested and held in camps without trial. The elections which followed were won by the NAZIs although Hitler and the NAZIs still had no majority. Hitler then had to come up with some arrangements which would give him the majority that he wanted.

### 14.3.2 The Enabling Act of March 1933.

This was a bill that was passed by Hitler in March 1933. Under the Act, Hitler had the powers to dissolve the Reichstag and he assumed unlimited powers to rule meaning that he could draft laws and use emergency powers to maintain order. The Reichstag (Upper house) was dissolved and all powers were transferred into Hitler's hands.

### 14.3.3 Hitler established the Ministry of Propaganda.

The ministry of Propaganda was headed by Joseph Goebbels. Through this ministry Hitler indoctrinated and brainwashed the masses into believing in Nazism. Authors and artists were forced to publicise and glorify the NAZI views hence freedom of expression was suppressed.

### 14.3.4 Press Censorship.

Press censorship meant that Hitler was in total control of any form of broadcasting. The media i.e. both electronic and print was placed under state control. All non NAZI newspapers and publications disappeared.

### 14.3.5 Banning of trade unions

A trade union is an association formed within an industry or a particular workplace to protect the rights of the workers. Hitler banned the trade unions to control the workers and ensure continuous production. He also banned strikes which disturbed industrial production. The trade unions were replaced by the NAZI Labour Front which all employees were supposed to join.

### 14.3.6 Banning of political parties

In July 1934, a law against the formation of political parties was passed and under this law the opposition political parties such as the Social Democratic party, Communists party and Catholic Centre party were all banned. Germany became a one party state i.e. for the Nazi party only.

### 14.3.7 The use of secret police (The Gestapo)

Hitler used his secret police called the Gestapo which infiltrated into the lives of the Germans keeping everyone afraid. The Gestapo monitored the day to day activities within the state and scrutinised all movements especially those by opponents. It killed Hitler's opponents.

### 14.3.8 Youth movements

Like Mussolini in Italy, Hitler made sure all youths joined the Nazi Youth Movements which were divided into age groups. Girls joined the League of Germany Maidens where they were encouraged to marry and make many children. Boys joined the Hitler Youth where they were taught to despise international friendship. They received military training and regular Nazi lectures on Nazi policies .i.e. they were indoctrinated with Nazi ideas. Entry to universities, colleges and other professions depended on a career in Hitler's Youth.

### 14.3.9 Elimination of opponents

Hitler eliminated his critics and opponents to ensure that no one openly criticised him. Elimination also induced fear among citizens. Elimination was the removal of opponents by the killing of those who opposed him like what happened on 30 June 1934, on the Night Of The Long Knives, when most of Hitler's opponents were killed, including Captain Rohm.

### 14.3.10 Control in local administration

Local administration involves from the villages, towns as well as cities. Nazi officials were put in charge of local councils to ensure implementation of the Nazi policies.

### 14.3.11 Control of education

Education was closely supervised or monitored by the Nazis. The aim of education was to promote Nazi ideas. History textbooks were rewritten and students took part in ceremonies of burning non-German books in Berlin. Teachers, lecturers and professors were closely monitored. Teachers had to take an oath of loyalty to Hitler and were to be Nazis. Jewish teachers were to be arrested as they were believed to be taking the professional duties of the German citizens.

### 14.3.12 The use of terror and violence

The term terror refers to something that causes fear. Hitler used his army and the Gestapo to instil fear in everyone. Children spied on their parents and teachers and resultantly victims were tortured to the extent of death.

### 14.3.13 Control of important posts

You need to know that after the death of Hindenburg in August 1934, Hitler became president as well as being the chancellor and now adopted the title Fuhrer. He was also the commander- in- chief of the army.

### 14.3.14 Banning of elections

In Germany, elections were banned meaning Hitler and the Nazi had the full mandate to rule Germany without fear of opposition or any threat to their political career.

### 14.3.15 Embarking on public work schemes

Public works refers to work done in maintaining public facilities like road construction, clinics and school building. It ensured that the unemployed got jobs and they then started to support Hitler.



## ACTIVITY 14.3 WRITING

We hope that you have understood Hitler’s rise to power or his consolidation of power. Can you do the following activity in the spaces provided? Outline methods used by Hitler to consolidate his power under the given sub-headings:

- Dictatorship/totalitarianism
- Use of violence
- Press censorship

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Reflection Question!

Now that you have understood Fascism from the last unit, can you make a reflection on its features? Hopefully you will come up with the answer as below:

- 1a. Five features of Nazism are:
- i. totalitarianism
  - ii. Self sufficiency
  - iii. Dictatorship
  - iv. One party states
  - v. Anti Semitism
  - vi. Violence
  - vii. Media censorship

The word totalitarianism or total control means having everything under an individual control. In his consolidation of power Hitler had to make sure totalitarianism was achieved. Other political parties were banned e.g. the Communists party, Catholic Centre party were banned and Germany became a one party state. A law to suppress formation of political parties was passed in July 1934. Hitler banned elections and this implied that Hitler had the full mandate to do whatever he deemed necessary and rule his people without elections since all political parties had been banned. Hitler made use of violence to crush and threaten any political elements who would want to rise against Nazism like the Jews and Catholics. The media was controlled (**CENSORSHIP**). Hitler had a minister of **propaganda**, Joseph Goebbels. He became the centre for any publication and made constant use of propaganda under Goebbels.

## Reading summary tip on consolidation!!!

He created a secret police called the GESTAPO. It was feared because it was the eye and ear of the NAZI party .GESTAPO was a network of spies. Hitler eliminated his opponents including his former friends on 30 June 1934. It is best known as Night of the Long Knives. Those killed include Rohm and Von Schleicher. The killings

destroyed Hitler's enemies in the Nazi Party. Slogans and war cries were used e.g. "Hitler is always right". Hitler used the title FUHRER meaning the hero which showed and made total establishment of his authority in Germany. Girls joined the League of German Maidens where they were taught subjects like domestic science on how to do best for their home. Sex education was taught to girls where they were encouraged to marry and have large families of which they could have more children to help supplement the army. Boys joined the Hitler youth at the age of 14 and they were indoctrinated on war, physical strength taught to recite the slogans and the importance of loyalty, obedience and patriotism for the honour and glory of German race. Hitler introduced the Enabling Act in March 1933. It made Hitler a complete dictator, because he could introduce laws without approval of the parliament and dissolve any parliamentary obligations to his favour.

Suspected government enemies were eliminated from the Civil Service e.g. Jews since they were believed to be state enemies. Workers lost rights and trade unions were banned in Germany. There were constant raids on leaders of trade unions and leaders were arrested and their monies confiscated to support Nazism. Trade unions were replaced by the German Labour Front controlled by the NAZI members. Strikes were banned as they were regarded to forestall reviving industrial production. Religion was controlled and there was strict monitoring of religious groups which ended with Catholicism as the dominant religion. To cement this Hitler signed the CONCORDAT with the Pope. In 1937 there was a disagreement with the church. It led to arrest and imprisonment of Catholic Priests and Catholic schools were closed. Many others were sent to concentration camps. He also banned the Catholic scouts.

When Hindenburg died Hitler became both President and Prime Minister and this made the landmark to his consolidation of power. Hitler introduced Accounts law in which foreigners with bank accounts in Germany were not allowed to withdraw money to use outside Germany.

## Feedback on Reflection

To what extent did the different Germany races benefit from these domestic policies?

To a greater extent,

- He reduced unemployment by re-armament and public works creating more jobs to the citizens.
- Agricultural production improved in Germany and this benefited many because food was now available.
- Production in industries improved due to banning of strikes and demonstrations.
- He brought law and order by banning various political parties which always caused chaos and disorder in the state encouraging strikes and demonstrations.
- Infrastructure was also improved through public works and this also created employment.
- Workers got free Sundays and free tours to motivate and stick to weekly working days and this gained him much support since they had no rest.
- Workers at large lost their rights as trade unions which represented their rights were banned as well as strikes.
- Persecution of Jews was heathen and most people lost their lives. Opponents to Nazism were arrested or killed and it meant death to many people

However,

- Jews were persecuted
- Blacks were persecuted
- Slaves and gypsies did not benefit
- Study tip!

Hitler embarked on the policy of anti-Semitism. What's your understanding of the policy? What was the policy all about and who were the people killed? What reasons were forwarded to the persecution? Can you try and discuss with your friend on this policy and after brainstorming can you check if you can come up with the following

points on the policy. Anti-Semitism refers to persecution of the Jews and the Semites referred to as the Jewish race. The reasons for persecuting the Jews were that the Jews were solely responsible for the defeat of Germany in the First World War i.e. 'they stabbed the Germans in the back' and all problems such as inflation and unemployment were caused by the Jews. The social status of the Jews was better compared to the Germans as they owned businesses, shops and mines and Hitler simply wanted to rob them. Teachers, doctors, nurses were mostly Jews and it was necessary to eliminate them from the civil service and appoint Germans. Poisonous gas was used in the final solution to exterminate Jews in Germany whilst others were sent to concentration camps where they still died of hunger and starvation also hard labour pains. They were forced to wear yellow badges for easy identification. Marriage between Jews and Germans was forbidden and eventually led to divorce same as having sex between the two was outlawed led to death penalty. Jewish homes, shops and synagogues were burnt and destroyed and shops were also looted. Jewish infrastructure was redistributed to the Germans and their accounts were taken by the state. The campaign was led by the minister of propaganda and described them as "parasites which feed on the blood of other nations"

### Reflection exercise!!!

We hope that the following exercise will help you understand the policy of anti-Semitism. Can you also add some additional points to the policy from your reading of this unit? To what extent did the policy of anti-Semitism benefit the Germans?

To a greater extent

- Creation of employment to the Germans as teachers, nurses, doctors and professors
- Government got property from the Jews e.g. shops
- Germans benefited from Jewish bank accounts as they were left to their disposal

However

- Most families were destroyed as they divorced and separated
- Parents were separated

- Skilled workers e.g. lawyers, doctors and scientists were lost
- There were poor medical facilities as most doctors were Jews
- Nazi government lost support from the churches e.g. protestant churches and Catholics

## 14.4 Foreign Policies Aims

### Tips to the Aims

You have heard the term foreign policy before and do you still remember what it means? The term refers to how Hitler operated and conducted with neighbouring states as well as those outside Europe. Policies would focus on all that happened to Germany before and how he now wants the state to be. Hitler's policies were characterised with anger and fury of the First World War losses. There was need to retain the destroyed German image from poor leadership that had existed before. Let's now consider the following points to understand his foreign policy.

Hitler mainly wanted to revisit and reverse the Versailles Treaty by denouncing and regaining lost territories during the First World War. He also among his chief aims wanted to create living space (LIBENSRAUM) for the German. He wanted expansion of German into Eastern Europe towards Russia to regain all lost territories e.g. Upper Silesia, Danzig, Saar, Posen, Memel, to obtain markets for German finished goods in Africa and raw materials, to compete with Britain for colonies and regain lost colonies in Africa, restore the pride of the Germans, crush communism and to make Germany a great power again.

### 14.5 Hitler's foreign policies

An act of aggression is when one does something that affects peace and freedom of another country or person. Just think of how many times you have been at loggerheads with your neighbour over boundaries or certain pieces of land. These were moves done by Hitler that saw the violation of human rights or violation of what had been agreed especially at the treaty of Versailles. In the beginning of this unit we discussed the term aggression. In this sub unit can you please try find out where aggression is implied on the foreign policies.

### 14.5.1 The Non-aggression Pact (1934)

On his foreign policies, Hitler signed the German- Polish Non Aggression Pact of 1934 with Poland. It was a 10 year pact with Poland in which they agreed not to show aggression to each other.

### 14.5.2 Withdrawal from the League of Nations (1934)

Germany also withdrew from the league in 1934, Germans withdrew from the League of Nations and from the Disarmament Conference openly violated the Versailles Treaty by declaring a rearmament programme through conscription and establishing of a navy.

### 14.5.3 Attempt at Anschluss (1934)

Hitler also attempted on the Anschluss in 1934 which was uniting of German and Austria-Hungary which had been forbidden on the Versailles treaty but this measure was stopped by Mussolini who sends troops to the Brenner Pass Austrian border to stop the occupation. German army occupied Austria and completed the union between Germany and Austria

### 14.5.4 The Saar plebiscite (1935)

Germany also occupied the Saar a rich coal mining area. In 1935 Hitler successfully occupied the Saar which had been given to France under the Versailles Treaty. A plebiscite was held in January 1935 and 90% was to return to Germany and by March 1935 Saar was now under Germany.

### 14.5.5 The Anglo-German naval agreement (1935)

Hitler also signed the Anglo German Naval Agreement in 1935 with Britain and in this agreement accepted that German could ignore the disarmament clause of the Versailles Treaty by building war ships not beyond 35% of British naval strength.

### 14.5.6 Occupation of the Rhineland (1936)

Germany made swift occupation of Rhineland which had been a demilitarised zone.

In 1936 Hitler send troops and occupied the Rhineland in open violation of the Versailles Treaty. To the British it was right and just for the German army to move into the Rhineland. The Rhineland was a springboard for the German occupation and attack on France and easy protection of her industries in the Ruhr valley.

### 14.5.7 The Rome-Berlin Axis (1936)

Hitler also signed the Rome- Berlin Axis in 1936 with Mussolini. The two countries promised to cooperate in foreign affairs and as the axis strengthened Mussolini could not stop Hitler from uniting Germany and Austria.

### 14.4.8 The Spanish civil war (1936)

Germany soldiers took part in the Spanish civil war where Hitler and Mussolini assisted General Franco with weapons and soldiers. They tested weapons and gained experience for their armies. This was followed by the Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis in 1937.

### 14.5.9 The Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis (1937)

Hitler also signed the Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis with Italy and Japan strengthening his relations with her once one time enemy France and stretching into Asian relations.

### 14.5.10 Invasion of the Sudetenland (1938) and Czechoslovakia (1939)

Hitler invaded Sudetenland in 1938 which was one of Czechoslovakia's provinces with about three million German-speaking people. Hitler wanted to re-unite his people and the Germans in Sudetenland and the rest of the Germans again violating the Versailles Treaty. In 1938 Hitler attended the Munich Conference. It was held in Germany in September 1938 and its aim was to discuss the future of Czechoslovakia. It was attended by Hitler, Mussolini, Chamberlain of Britain and Daladier. Surprisingly there were no representatives from Czechoslovakia. At this conference Hitler assured other leaders that Sudetenland was his last territorial demand. Hitler took the Sudetenland from Czechoslovakia after the Munich Conference. Annexation of Czechoslovakia in 1939 shocked many as Hitler backtracked on his earlier promise and moved to take control of Czechoslovakia. Hitler then invaded the rest of Czechoslovakia. Hitler

wanted to control the massive Skoda Army Works. The annexation of Czechoslovakia made Chamberlain to realise Hitler's aggressiveness.

### 14.5.11 The Pact of Steel (1939)

Hitler signed the pact of steel with Mussolini in 1939. It was a military agreement to assist each other in war. This was followed by Nazi Soviet non-aggression pact in 1939 where Hitler requested the neutrality of Soviet Union in the event of war between German and Poland. Germany and Russia also agreed to invade and share Poland.

### 14.5.12 The invasion of Poland and the outbreak of the Second World War

Germany invaded Poland in 1939 because of the Polish gains at the treaty of Versailles where Upper Silesia, Posen, and the Polish Corridor were taken away from Germany and given to the new state of Poland. After the occupation of Poland by Germany, Britain sent an ultimatum to Germany on September 3 1939. The ultimatum demanded Germany to leave Poland. Hitler ignored the ultimatum then Britain declared war on Germany. This became the immediate cause of the Second World War. Hitler immediately introduced conscription in German. Japan and Germany signed the Anti-Comintern pact. It was an agreement to fight communism in the world. The German army also occupied Memel and Danzig, which had been declared a free state under the League of Nations on the Versailles treaty.

### Summary

This has been one of the fascinating units where you have learnt of Nazism and Dictatorship in Germany. Can you try and tell your friend on the factors which enabled Hitler to rise to power in Germany. Hopefully you still remember those factors and more to it what did you understand by Hitler's domestic and foreign policies? Were they a good thing to be implemented by Hitler in his leadership? If the answer is yes can you try to persuade your friend why you have that view and if no can you again persuade them. The unit in brief has exposed you to the characteristics of Nazism, the rise of Hitler and the domestic as well as foreign policies that Hitler applied for the restoration of German pride.

## Assessment test 1

- 1a. List 5 the political problems faced by Germany after First World War. (5)
- b. Describe the policy of Anti-Semitism (12)
- c. To what extent did the Germans benefit from the policy? (8)

## Sample Examination Questions

- 1.a) Identify any five Nazi leaders. (5)
  - b) Describe Hitler's domestic policy between 1933 and 1939. (12)
  - c) To what extent did the Germany benefit from this domestic policy? (8)
- 
- 2.a) Give any five acts of aggression committed by Hitler in the 1930s. (5)
  - b) Outline Hitler's policy up to 1939. (12)
  - c) How successful was Hitler in achieving his aims in foreign policy. (8)
- 
- 3.a) Identify any five groups of people that were victims of Hitler in German. (5)
  - b) Describe Hitler's policy towards the Jews in German up to 1939. (12)
  - c) Did the German benefit from Hitler s policy towards the Jews? Explain your answer. (8)
- 
- 4.a) State any five factors that promoted the rise of Hitler to power in Germany. (5)
  - b) Describe Hitler's foreign policy between 1933 and 1939. (12)
  - c) Did the people of Germany benefit from Hitler s policy? Explain your answer. (8)

## Suggested answers to sample examination questions

1a. Identify any five Nazi leaders (5)

- Adolf Hitler
- Hermann Goring
- Joseph Goebbels
- Rudolf Hess
- Albert Speer

b. Describe Hitler's domestic policy between 1933 and 1939 (12)

- 1933 March the Enabling Act
- Ministry of propaganda
- Press censorship
- Banning of trade unions
- Night of the long knives
- Education system

c. To what extent did the Germans benefit from this domestic policy (8)

### **Benefits**

- employment created
- restoration of national pride
- law and order restored
- infrastructural development
- boosted industrial production
- increased agricultural production
- the country became self sufficient

## Non benefits

- Fear
- Jews killed
- No freedom of speech
- Loss of civil liberties
- Press censorship

2a). Give any five acts of aggression committed by Hitler in the 1930s (5)

- Withdrawal from the league of nations
- Withdrawal from the disarmament conference
- Invasion of Poland
- Invasion of Austria and proclamation of Anschluss with Austria

b) Outline Hitler's foreign policy up to 1939 (12)

- characterised by acts of aggression
- also aimed at violating both the League of Nations and the treaty of Versailles
- 1933, withdrawal from the disarmament conference and the league
- 1934, attempts on Austria
- 1937, Anti-Comintern Pact
- 1938, Munich agreement
- 1939, Non-aggression Pact with Poland
- 1939, invasion of Poland

c) How successful was Hitler in achieving his aims in foreign policy? (8)

To a greater extent,

- Acts of aggression up to 1939 met little resistance
- Was able to expand German Empire in Europe
- Acted as bulwark against communist expansion in Europe

However,

- Many Germans lost their lives as a result of Hitler's foreign adventures
- Resources wasted in foreign wars

3.a) Identify any five groups of people that were victims of Hitler in Germany? (5)

- Jews
- Communists
- Trade unions
- Professionals(teachers ,doctors, lawyers etc)
- Women
- Youths

b. Describe Hitler's policy towards the Jews in Germany up to 1939? (12)

- Persecution of Jews, a popular policy with Germans initially.
- Jews used as a scapegoat for everything from Versailles onwards –depression, unemployment. Communism etc
- The anti Jewish campaign given legal status by the 1935 Nuremberg laws which deprived Jews of German citizenship forbade them to marry no Jewish and ruled that a person with even one Jewish grandparent must be classified as a Jew.
- Ultimately the final solution was developed to exterminate the Jews through the use of gas chambers and sending others into exile.

c) Did the Germans benefit from Hitler's policy towards the Jews? Explain your answer.

- Germans filled up vacancies in employment left by the Jews –at universities, in schools, in the judiciary etc.
- Germans took over enterprises and businesses abandoned by the Jews as a result of Hitler's policy.
- Nationalist feeling were boosted especially those of Germans who blamed everything on the Jews
- Germany was robbed of several skilled manpower teachers, doctors, lawyers etc.

4.a) State any five factors that promoted the rise of Hitler to power in Germany.(5)

- Harshness of the Treaty of Versailles
- Unpopularity of the Weimar Republic
- Hitler's propaganda and oratorical skill
- Violence of the Nazis
- Inflation
- Rise of radicalism
- Industrial unrest
- Unemployment
- Great depression

b) Describe Hitler's foreign policy between 1933 and 1939.(12)

- 1933 Hitler withdrew Germany from Disarmament Conference and the league of all nations
- 1933 Hitler violated the treaty of Versailles by ordering German rearmament and the creation of the German air force.
- 1934 attempted to invade Austria but was stopped or thwarted by Italy.
- 1935 Hitler publicly announced German rearmament.

- 1936 Hitler sent German troops to support General Franco in the Spanish civil war.
- 1937 Hitler signed the anti-Comintern Pact with Japan
- 1938 Hitler attended the Munich conference and won Sudetenland.
- 1939 Hitler send German forces to invade the whole of Czechoslovakia.
- September 1939 Hitler ordered the invasion of Poland marking the beginning of World war 11.

c) Did the people of Germany benefit from Hitler's foreign policy? Explain your answer. (8)

### **Benefits**

- Germans gained extra living space through Hitler's conquest of Austria and Czechoslovakia.
- Their pride was restored by violation of the treaty of Versailles'
- Industry obtained raw materials from occupied territory such as the Saar basin and Czechoslovakia.
- Employment created in rearmament industries when German moved out of the disarmament conference.

### **Non benefits**

- German soldiers died in the wars of invasion.
- German blindly driven into a disastrous war.
- German Jews in occupied territories suffered.

## **References**

The following reading list should help you to understand more on European History and the concept of Fascism in Germany. Consider the list for further reading.

Mlambo A.S *Focus study Aids "O" Level History Revision* (1999) College Press

Moyana H and Sibanda M *African Heritage Book 4* (2003) Zimbabwe Publishing House

# UNIT 15: THE SECOND WORLD WAR (1939-1945)

- 15.1 Causes of the Second World War
- 15.2 Events of the Second World War
- 15.3 Results of the Second World War

## Introduction

In unit eleven we looked at the Paris Peace Settlement where you may have noted the harsh nature of the Treaty of Versailles. We also looked at the rise of dictators in Europe where you may have realised the acts of aggression committed by the dictators of Italy and Germany. These developments disturbed the peace that was made at the Paris Peace Conference in 1919 and a more disastrous war broke out. This was the Second World War which was fought between 1939 and 1945. In this unit we shall look at the causes, the major events and the results of the Second World War. We shall also look at the USA involvement in the Second World War and the technological warfare advancements during this world war, particularly “blitzkrieg” or lightning warfare by Germany and the atomic bombs used by the allies at Hiroshima and Nagasaki in Japan. At the end of the unit we shall make an analysis of the positive and negative effects of the Second World War.



## OBJECTIVES

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- explain the causes of the Second World War
- describe the main events of the Second World War
- evaluate the results and impact of the Second World War



## KEY WORDS

- **world war** – a major war involving almost all the continents of the world
- **civil war** - a war between groups of people within the same country

- **invasion** - an act of entering a country so as to conquer or occupy
- **victory** - an act of winning
- **defeat** - prevent someone from achieving an aim
- **battles** - military encounters
- **pacts/treaties** - agreements signed by countries
- **violation/defiance** - open refusal to obey lawful commands
- **Axis Powers** - Germany, Italy, Japan and their supporters during the Second World War
- **Allied Powers** - Britain, France, Russia, the U.S.A. and their supporters during the Second World War
- **armaments** - weapons of war
- **disarmament** - the reduction or withdrawal of military forces and weapons



**TIME**

You are required to spend ten hours on this unit.



**STUDY SKILLS**

This unit should equip you with the important skills of research, analysis and interpretation as you research on the causes of the Second World War. You are also required to interpret maps, cartoons and pictures showing the events of the Second World War. You can get some of the pictures from the Internet.

## 15.1 Causes of the Second World War

The causes of the Second World War can be divided into long-term causes and short-term causes. The long-term causes are the remote causes which can be traced back to the results of the First World War when the Paris Peace-makers failed to make everlasting peace. We hope you still recall Woodrow Wilson, Georges Clemenceau and David Lloyd George as the leading peace negotiators at the Paris conference.

The short-term causes of the Second World War are the most recent or immediate reasons for the war. Here are the reasons for the Second World War.

### 15.1.1 Dissatisfaction with the Versailles Treaty

In unit ten you looked at the Paris peace settlement where you may have realised the harshness of the treaty of Versailles. The vindictive nature of the Treaty of Versailles was highly resented by Germany and Italy. Under the leadership of Hitler, the German government became determined to destroy the treaty of Versailles. Germany started to rearm and adopted an aggressive foreign policy reclaiming the territory and the glory that the treaty of Versailles had robbed her of. This created tension among the European countries, particularly between Germany and the allied powers. The tension resulted in the Second World War. In addition, there was disillusionment in Italy as the result of the Paris Peace Settlement. Italy had joined the First World War hoping to gain territory. She especially wanted South Tyrol, Trentino, Trieste, and Dalmatia (Austrian territory). However, when peace was made at Paris, the victorious powers ignored the promises that they made to Italy concerning Albania and Asia Minor. Italy became determined to take the territory that she desired by force. This created bad blood between Italy and the allies. Italy then teamed up with aggressors such as Germany and Japan. In 1936 Mussolini signed the Rome-Berlin Axis with Germany. In 1937 she joined the Rome-Berlin Tokyo Axis of Italy, Germany and Japan. The three dictators caused havoc in Europe.

### 15.1.2 Failure of disarmament

Nations usually go to war if they have the means to make war. We hope that you still remember that the First World War was fought using modern weapons of mass destruction such as dreadnoughts, tanks, artillery shells and many others. After the war many countries continued to manufacture dangerous weapons. Surely these weapons could not have been kept idle. World disarmament, as suggested by President Woodrow Wilson, was very difficult to achieve. The disarmament conferences of 1932-35 managed to disarm Germany for a short while. The League of Nations failed to persuade its member countries to reduce their armaments, which made war inevitable. Germany felt betrayed and unsafe in Europe and moved out of the League of Nations. Hitler walked out of the disarmament conferences and started

to rearm Germany. There was no one to stop him. The other members of the League of Nations also started to rearm, thus preparing for another war.

### 15.1.3 The rise of dictators in Europe

#### **Remember**

A dictator is a ruler who has total power over a country. In Africa, there were dictators such as Tshaka, Idi Amini and Mobutu Sese Seko who came to power. In Europe dictators such as Adolf Hitler, Benito Mussolini, General Franco and Joseph Stalin came to power after the First World War. Now let us look again at the rise of dictators in Europe.

The dictators who came to power in Japan, Italy and Germany were very aggressive and they wanted to dominate others. Mussolini, the dictator of Italy, openly defied the League of Nations and invaded Ethiopia in 1935. Japan invaded China and occupied the Chinese province of Manchuria in 1931 and the League of Nations did not act. When Hitler came to power in Germany he committed many acts of aggression because of his desire for power. He re-armed Germany challenging the Versailles settlement and this triggered an arms race among the great powers. Hitler walked out of the disarmament conference and pulled Germany out of the League of Nations. In 1936 Hitler remilitarised the Rhineland thereby violating the treaty of Versailles and the Locarno Pacts (1925). Germany also joined the Rome-Berlin Axis which united the aggressive dictators and divided Europe into enemy camps. Furthermore, in 1938, Hitler invaded Austria and proclaimed Anschluss, a union with Austria which had been forbidden by the treaty of Versailles. This was another violation of the treaty of Versailles by Hitler which brought the Second World War nearer. In 1938 again, Hitler and the Nazis annexed the Sudetenland in total defiance of the treaty of St Germain which was signed by Austria. In March 1939 Hitler invaded Czechoslovakia. This was a violation of the Munich agreement signed between Britain and Germany and this ended Britain's policy of appeasement. The Nazi-Soviet pact which was signed between Germany and Russia in 1939 gave Hitler the courage to continue with his acts of aggression knowing that Russia would not attack Germany from the East. This meant that Germany would not have to fight on two fronts. In September 1939 Hitler invaded Poland and this invasion became the immediate cause of the Second World War. France and Britain, who had signed an agreement that guaranteed Poland's frontiers, declared war on Germany.

### 15.1.4 Failure of the League of Nations

In the previous unit you may have realised that the League of Nations organisation was created on a very weak foundation. It became an ineffective organisation as it failed to maintain peace in the world especially in the 1930s. When Japan invaded Manchuria in 1931, the League of Nations did not act and this encouraged more acts of aggression by the other dictators which disturbed world peace. The League was also failed to act when Mussolini invaded Ethiopia in 1935. The half-hearted sanctions imposed on Italy encouraged even more aggression especially from Adolf Hitler of Germany. The League also did nothing when Hitler invaded Austria, the Sudetenland, Czechoslovakia and Poland. The invasion of Poland became the immediate cause of the Second World War.

### 15.1.5 The policy of appeasement

We hope you saw the word appeasement in our key words. Appeasement was a policy to preserve peace that was adopted by the Western Allies such as Britain and France. The policy involved avoiding war with aggressive nations such as Japan, Italy and Germany by giving way to their demands provided that these demands were not too unreasonable. Britain and France never enforced the provisions of the treaty of Versailles where they felt that these were not fair for Germany. Hitler took advantage of this policy by Britain and France to push for more demands. He demanded the land that Germany had lost in the treaty of Versailles and forcefully occupied the Rhineland, Austria, the Sudetenland, Czechoslovakia and Poland without any fear. These invasions caused the Second World War.

### 15.1.6 The Great Depression (1929-1939)

#### NOTE IT!

The world experienced a serious economic fall between 1929 and 1939. This long and severe fall in an economy or market is called a depression. An economic depression can also be called a slump. The First World War left the European countries in huge debts, massive unemployment and galloping inflations. To worsen the situation, American money which Europe had depended on was withdrawn after the First World War. World trade fell and the Great Depression set in. The depression provided fertile ground for the rise of radical parties, led by political aggressors such as Mussolini

and Hitler. Although Britain and France tried to appease Hitler and Mussolini and their parties, the Nazi party and the Fascist party respectively, war was sure to come because the economic hardships continued in Europe, particularly in Germany and in Italy. It was just a matter of time.

### 15.1.7 USA Isolationism

I hope you still remember that the USA emerged from the First World War with perhaps the most powerful economic and political systems. After signing the Paris Peace settlement, the USA withdrew from the affairs of Europe. She did not join the League of Nations although the organisation was the brainchild of Woodrow Wilson, the USA president. This American policy of non-intervention in the affairs of Europe is known as isolationism. Europe, especially the Allies, desperately needed American assistance to re-build their economies and to solve their political and social problems. Dictators such as Hitler and Mussolini took advantage of the absence of the USA from the affairs of Europe and became aggressive. The European countries greatly needed powerful allies such as the USA to control the aggressors. The League of Nations also needed the support of the USA militarily, financially and even morally. Without the membership of the USA the League Of Nations failed to preserve peace.

### 15.1.8 Nationalism

We hope that you love your country and that you feel obliged to protect it in every way possible. Yes! Love for one's country and the desire for national independence is referred to as nationalism. You should recall that the spirit of Nationalism was a factor that influenced the First World War. If you cannot recall, go back to Unit ten and look for the various ethnic groups which struggled for their independence from Austria-Hungary and Turkey. We hope you were able to get the likes of Slavs, Slovenes, Poles, Croats and Czechs. The peace settlement that followed First World War did not solve the problems of the nationalistic minorities throughout the world. In Eastern Europe for example when the new states of Yugoslavia, Poland and Czechoslovakia were created many people of the same ethnic groups were separated when the new and very unnatural boundaries were drawn. This was against Woodrow Wilson's principle of nationality. Nationalism was the main force behind the German, Italian and Japanese aggressions of the 1930s and these aggressions led to the Second World War. When Hitler came to power in Germany, he invaded the Sudetenland,

Czechoslovakia and Poland and claimed the zones that the treaty of Versailles had robbed Germany of. Hitler's aggression on Czechoslovakia and Poland caused the Second World war.

### 15.1.9 The Spanish Civil War (1936)

In 1936 there was a civil war in Spain. The civil war was between the Republican government and the army units under the command of General Franco. The government was supported by the Nationalists who included liberals, trade unionists, socialists, communists and anarchists. Germany and Italy backed General Franco. Hitler and Mussolini desired the creation of a Fascist Spain which would be a useful ally against Britain and France. During the civil war Germany's planes ferried General Franco's forces from Morocco to Spain. Russia supplied arms and advisors to the Spanish government. The Civil War was significant in the outbreak of the Second World War because it became a miniature rehearsal of the Second World War, the German air force (the Luftwaffe) gained valuable experience. Both Germany and Italy tried out new methods of warfare and new weapons for example blitzkrieg (lightning war), dive-bombing and high level bombing were perfected. Hitler became very confident that Germany will win the war against any army in the world. This war experience boosted the morale of Germany. The policy of non-intervention that was pursued by Britain and France in the Civil War encouraged continued acts of aggression by Germany and Italy. The victory of General Franco gave Hitler much confidence that Germany could do the same to Russia. Russia became suspicious of her partners leading to the Nazi-Soviet Pact which was very dangerous to Poland. The Spanish Civil War changed the balance of power in Europe. The prolongation of the war (1936-1939) drained Italy's resources. Italy then became a victim of Hitler's calculations. The two dictators signed the pact of steel which cemented the military relations between them. By signing the pact of steel, the Rome-Berlin axis and the Rome-Berlin-Tokyo axis, Hitler became very confident of Italy's support in the event of a war. Europe was slowly but surely drifting into a major war and the line up to the war was gradually forming.



## ACTIVITY 15.1: RESEARCH AND WRITING

1. Collect pictures of scenes from the Second World War. Your pictures can come from various sources of historical evidence that you can find in your home area and put them in your resource file. Label each picture.
2. List any 10 weapons that were used during the Second World War.
3. State any five causes of the Second World War.
4. Write a short essay of about 20 lines describing the significance of the Spanish Civil War in the outbreak of the Second World War.



## ACTIVITY 15:1 POSSIBLE ANSWERS

2. We hope that you have identified the weapons used during the Second World War as:

- a) Tanks
- b) Artillery shells
- c) Anti-tank guns
- d) Bomber planes
- e) Anti-air machine guns
- f) Atomic bombs
- g) 25 pounder guns
- h) Poisonous gases
- i) Howitzers
- j) Submarines

3. It is correct to identify the causes of the Second World War as:

- a) Dissatisfaction with the treaty of Versailles
- b) The rise of dictators in Europe

- c) Failure of disarmament
- d) The Spanish Civil War
- e) Failure of the League of Nations

4. We hope that you have seen the significance of the Spanish Civil War in the outbreak of WW2 as follows:

- The Spanish civil war became a rehearsal of the Second World War where the combatants tried out and perfected their weapons and skills. Specifically blitzkrieg, dive-bombing and high level bombing were perfected.
- The Luftwaffe (The German air force), gained valuable experience. Hitler became confident that Germany will win the war against any army in the world.
- Winning the war boosted the morale of the Nazis.
- The policy of non-intervention pursued by Britain and France promoted aggression by Germany and Italy.
- The victory of General Franco gave Hitler the courage to attack Russia hoping to win.
- Russia became suspicious of Britain and France and she signed the Nazi-Soviet Pact with Germany.
- Europe was divided into hostile camps namely The Stressa Front Powers and The Axis Powers.
- The position of Poland in Europe became precarious. She was surrounded by two gigantic enemies namely Russia and Germany (She was vulnerable to attacks by the two).
- The balance of power in Europe was changed when Italy, a member of the Stressa Front, allied with Germany by signing the pact of steel. The line up for the Second World War was gradually forming up, the Axis Powers versus the Allied powers.
- Naval Race intensified and new weapons of mass destruction were invented.
- Slowly but surely Europe was drifting towards another war.

### 15.1.10 The invasion of Poland

We hope you still remember that when the Treaty of Versailles was signed Germany lost territory to Poland. Can you name some of the zones that Germany lost to Poland in the treaty of Versailles? Yes, it is correct to say East Prussia, Upper Silesia, Posen and the Polish Corridor. Well, the Germans found this very unfair and under the leadership of Hitler, Germany became determined to regain her lost territory. In August 1939 Germany and Russia signed the non-aggression pact. The pact gave Hitler the courage to invade Poland, knowing that Russia would not intervene. On September 1939 Germany invaded Poland. France and Britain went to war with Germany because they had signed an agreement to support Poland in the event of German aggression. The invasion of Poland by Germany was therefore the immediate cause of the Second World War.

## 15.2 EVENTS OF THE SECOND WORLD WAR

The Second World War was fought mainly in Eastern Europe, Western Europe and parts of Asia, especially in Japan. It was a modern type of warfare which was fought using modern weapons such as aeroplanes, atomic bombs and poisonous gases. Collect pictures of the weapons used during the Second World War and paste them in your journal.

### 15.2.1 Blitzkrieg in Poland (1939)

The Second World War started in 1939, with the German invasion of Poland. The Nazi method of attack on Poland was called Blitzkrieg which means lightning war. It involved the rapid movement of tanks backed by fighter and bomber planes. When Germany attacked Poland in 1939, Britain and France went to war with Germany in order to protect Poland. They had given Poland guarantees of protection against German aggression. They declared war on Germany on 3 September although they were not ready for it. Poland was attacked by two great powers namely Germany from the West and Russia from the East. Germany used superior weapons and Poland fell in seventeen days and she surrendered on 17 September 1939. Britain and France failed to protect their "blue-eyed boy". Russia took advantage of the war with Poland to regain Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia.



## ACTIVITY 15:2 RESEARCH

We hope you will find this activity very interesting. You may collect pictures of the lightning warfare for you to have a better understanding of blitzkrieg during the Second World War and answer the following questions.

1. Define blitzkrieg.
  
2. Name the countries which fought in the Polish campaign.
  
3. Identify any five weapons used in the Polish campaign.
  
- 4a. Name the Blitzkrieg components during the invasion of Poland by Germany.
  
- b. Outline the roles of each Blitzkrieg component during the second world war.
  
- c. Why was blitzkrieg successful in Poland?

### 15.2.2 The Phoney War (September to March 1940)

You may be wondering what happened in Europe after the conquest of Poland. Well, there was little action involving Germany, France and Britain. This period is referred to as Phoney War or Fake War, and it ran between September 1939 and March 1940. During this period Britain and France did not want to attack Germany, hoping that peace terms might be arranged with Germany like what had happened in 1938, when the Munich agreement was signed. They believed that a naval blockade on Germany would bring her down to her knees. France and Britain also needed time to build their forces and so during this lull they concentrated on re-armament, military training and Britain evacuated children in London. France and Britain had rushed

troops to Norway but later withdrew without any fighting .This was because Britain could not fight a neutral country .On her part, Germany hoped that the pause would water down the determination to fight that France and Britain had and encouraged them to negotiate peace. Very few encounters took place in the winter of 1939. Only Finland offered resistance in a war which began in November 1939 and ended in Russian victory in March 1940. In Scapaflow, a small German submarine sank the "Royal Oak" of the allies. Later on "The Great Spee" was forced into Montevideo harbour by three British cruisers. There were no offensives in the West and the Allies remained on the defensive. For the French and the British, the struggle seemed quite unreal-a fake war! The Phoney War ended on 10 May 1940 when Germany invaded Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg.

### 15.2.3 War in Western Europe: The fall of France (13 May 1940)

In October, 1939, Hitler offered peace to the western powers and it was declined .He then embarked on an offensive on the Western Front where the Nazis overran Belgium, Denmark, Norway, Luxembourg and the Netherland. Germany then moved towards France and Britain began to mobilise in preparation for war .The German forces entered France through the Ardennes forest which was left undefended by France who had believed that tanks could not pass through it .Most of the French forces were in Flanders hoping that Germany would invade France through Belgium or Holland like what happened in the Schlieffen Plan during the First World War. Germany had superior methods of communication .Her air force, the Luftwaffe, bombed Paris and France surrendered .France was divided into two. The Northern part was occupied by the Nazis and the southern part was occupied by France .The part that was occupied by France was referred to as Vichy .Many French soldiers and the French from the occupied zones fled to Britain where they formed a government in exile under General de Gaulle .The British Prime Minister, Neville Chamberlain resigned and he was replaced by Winston Churchill .When France fell to the Germans, the British were trapped at Dunkirk. They retreated from the port of Dunkirk, taking some French and Belgian troops with them. However, Churchill became more determined to fight against Germany .France was knocked down by Germany and the Nazis formed a puppet government in France. This was the Vichy France which was led by Marshal Petain. After defeating France, Germany took control of the French colonial empire in Africa, Asia and the Pacific.

## 15.2.4 The Battle of Britain (Operation Sea Lion) August to September 1940

At this point you should take note that battles fought during a war can also be called operations. In this case, the battle that was fought in Britain was code named Operation Sea Lion. After defeating France, Hitler invaded Britain (blitzkrieg was taken to Britain). The invasion of Britain was code-named Operation Sea Lion. The Nazis bombarded the British cities especially London. The Luftwaffe( German air force) was tasked to destroy the British Royal Air force (RAF).The Germans bombarded the British radar stations, harbours, aerodromes, and munitions in the blitz .Germany had more planes than the British but the British radar system was very powerful. The British could detect the German planes in good time to shoot them down .By October 1940 the Nazis lost 1 733 planes most of which carried bombs and exploded on hitting the ground. By 1940 Germany was losing many fighter planes which made it difficult for her to continue with blitzkrieg in Britain and air attacks were called off. The German air force was then diverted to the Soviet Union (where blitzkrieg was also introduced).

## 15.2.5 Invasion of the Soviet Union (Operation Barbarossa) June 1941

By now, you should be familiar with battles being code-named. In June 1941, Germany attacked Russia in what was called "Operation Barbarossa."Germany attacked Russia because of Hitler's hatred of communism and the Jews. Hitler also desired to create some living space for the Germans. Germany especially wanted to control Russia's wealth, namely grain, coal and iron in the Ukraine and oil in Caucasus. Furthermore, both Germany and Russia wanted to control the Balkans .Lastly Germany had failed to defeat Britain. During Operation Barbarossa, the German forces made a three-pronged blitzkrieg attack namely the northern attack moving through the Baltic States towards Leningrad, the central attack towards Moscow and the Southern attack towards the Ukraine. Blitzkrieg in Russia was the biggest ever. It involved about 3550 tanks, 5000 aeroplanes, 3.5 million soldiers and it was fought over an arena of 3000km. The Soviet army was forced to retreat and they moved with their machinery and factory equipment (scorched earth policy). During the initial stages of the operation, the Russian cities of Leningrad, Moscow and Stalingrad went under siege. Thousands of Russians were killed but Germany failed to capture cities.

### 15.2.6 Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour (7 December 1941)

In the 1930s Japan pursued an expansionist policy in Asia. Her major target was China and in 1931 she invaded the Chinese province of Manchuria. To keep the Japanese aggression at check, the USA placed a restrictive embargo on her. Rather than giving in to the USA's demands, Japan decided to launch a surprise attack against the USA in an attempt to destroy the USA's naval power. On the morning of December 7 1941, Japan launched a surprise attack on the USA naval base at Pearl Harbour in Hawaii. During the attack, more than 2400 Americans died, 21 battleships were destroyed and more than 188 aircraft destroyed. The attack at Pearl Harbour angered the Americans that the USA declared war on Japan the following day. Thus the USA had abandoned the policy of Isolation and joined war on the side of the Allies thereby forming the Great Alliance of the USA, France, Russia and Britain.

### 15.2.7 The USA Entrance into the Second World War

**Remember** In Unit 10 of our module we said that the USA belatedly joined the First World War. History repeated itself in the Second World War.

The USA officially joined the Second World War on 8 December 1941 when she declared war on Japan, following the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour. Initially the USA had pursued isolationistic and neutrality policies, but later on abandoned them. In the inter-war period, the USA became involved in the naval race against Britain and Japan. The USA got involved in the Second World War through the war in Asia, which had arisen from the ambitions of Japan. Japan had previously defeated China and Russia. She had taken away several of Germany's eastern and Pacific colonies after the First World War. By 1933, the Japanese empire included Korea, Formosa (now Taiwan), Manchuria and the Marshal, Caroline and Mariana islands in the Pacific Ocean. Japan was also not spared by the Great Depression which had affected the Western democracies in the 1930s. However, Japan built a strong naval fleet which alarmed Britain from the British possessions in India, Burma and Malaya (Malaysia), France in Indochina (Vietnam) and the USA in the Pacific. When Japan occupied Indochina in 1941 the USA responded by cutting off the sales of vital scrap iron and oil to Japan (an embargo). The Grand Alliance of Britain, France, the USA and the Soviet Union was a very powerful power block against the Axis Powers (Germany, Italy and Japan). The Second World War was fought between the Grand Alliance and the Axis Powers.

### 15.2.8 D-Day for Germany (6 June 1944)

Let me take you a little bit to the scenario of the jungle. In the jungle, survival is for the fittest. The weak will always succumb to the invincible. On 6 June 1944, Germany met the invincible and this day is referred to as “Doomsday” to mean doom for Germany. On the day, the Americans, British and the Canadian troops landed on the coast of Normandy in France for a battle with Germany. Defeat was inevitable for Germany although her positions were heavily fortified. Perfect planning and good organisation enabled the Allied powers to gain an upper hand. The Allied forces were led by General Dwight D Eisenhower and they landed five assault units on the Normandy beaches. They pushed inland and broke through the German defences. Germany tried to launch an offensive but she was defeated at the battle of the Bulge. The Allies a crossed the river Rhine in Germany and advanced inland to meet with the Russian army at the river Elbe. The German army was defeated by the Russians who pushed westward to reoccupy the Ukraine and moving into the Baltic States. Russia occupied Warsaw in Poland and approached Berlin. Russia also occupied Hungary, Romania and Bulgaria. In January 1945, Hitler moved into an underground bunker in Berlin to direct the final stages of the war from there. He delivered a speech blaming the Jews for the war before he killed himself in his bunker on 30 April 1945. On May 7 1945, Germany surrendered and the Second World War came to an end.

### 15.2.9 The defeat of Japan: Hiroshima and Nagasaki

The Americans started to manufacture the atomic bombs in 1941. They had intended to use the bombs on Germany but instead they were used on Japan. The first atomic bomb was dropped at Hiroshima on 6 August 1945 and it killed many people. Many more were injured. No raid warning was given when the bomb was dropped. Another atomic bomb was dropped at Nagasaki killing about 35000 people and destroying half the city. Japan officially surrendered on 15 August 1945. Many more people died from radio activity and this continued to happen for a long time after the bombs had been dropped.

### 15.2.10 The Holocaust (Extermination of the Jews)

In Unit 14, you may have realised that racial discrimination was a key element in Hitler’s policies. During the Second World War, Hitler proceeded to implement his plans of removing what he regarded as the “unsuitable” human elements, especially

the Jews, from the face of Europe. The extermination of the Jews by the Nazis during the Second World War is generally referred to as the Holocaust. Prior to the Second World War, Hitler and the Nazis initially had the plan to send the Jews from the areas which were occupied by Germany to Madagascar. A new plan was put in place during the Second World War. This plan entailed to exterminate the Jews in Europe. The extermination involved directly shooting the victims or driving them to the poisonous gas chambers where they were asphyxiated to death. The major extermination centres were: Auschwitz, Belzec, Chelmo, Sobibor, Treblinka and Majdanek. The six centres used a gas called Zyklon B which used hydrogen cyanide to kill instantly. About six million Jews were killed in these concentration camps. From 1942 onwards the inmates were rounded up and transported by train to Poland where they were gassed. The outside world knew nothing about the crimes against humanity which were committed by the Nazis in Germany until she was invaded and defeated. The Nazi leaders were tried at Nuremberg for the crimes that they committed against humanity. The Soviets who were also responsible for the mass killing of people, though at a limited extent were not tried.



### ACTIVITY 15.3: RESEARCH AND WRITING

1. Do some research in your community or neighbourhood and find out if there is any elderly person who participated in the Second World War. Document this person's experiences during the war.
2. Name any three Axis powers and three Allied powers during the Second World War.
3. Identify the cases of Human Rights violation during the Second World War.
4. Why were the Axis Powers defeated during the Second World War?



### ACTIVITY 15:3 POSSIBLE ANSWERS

2. It is correct to say that Germany, Italy, Spain and Japan were the Axis powers and Britain, France and the USA were the Allied powers.

3. The cases of human rights violation during the Second World War included the following:

- Genocide committed by Hitler and the Nazis in the concentration camps
- Appalling living conditions in the prisoner of war camps
  - a) Poor sanitation
  - b) Over crowdedness
  - c) No warm clothes in the Russian bitter winter
  - d) Shootings and threats from the soldiers
    - Extermination of the Jews and Gypsies by the Nazis and the Fascists
    - Violence against women and cases of rape by the Nazis and the Fascists in the areas that they occupied
    - Discrimination against the Jews
    - Forced labour in the German occupied areas
    - Dropping of atomic bombs at Hiroshima and Nagasaki
    - Arrest of the members of the clergy by the Nazis and the Fascists and the subsequent killing of the clergy
    - Confiscation of church property by the Nazis and the Fascists
    - Ill-treatment of the Slavonic people and the Polish and Russian refugees
    - Killing of prisoners of war by both sides

To a greater extent,

During the Second World War, the Axis powers were defeated because:

- Germany failed to knock out Britain and had to abandon the attack on Britain. The survival of Britain kept the Western Allies alive until the USA joined the war.
- Lack of raw materials – Italy and Japan ran short of basic raw materials and had to import supplies. Germany too was short of raw materials such as rubber, cotton, nickel and later on oil.

- USA entry into the war- USA boosted the Allied camp when she joined the war in 1941. The USA kept the Allies well supplied. The many resources of the USA and those of the USSR and the British Empire enabled them to sponsor the war for a long time while the Axis powers did not have adequate resources to finance the war for a long time.
- The allies especially Britain and USA had superior air forces and superior navies. The Allies won the naval battles in the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean. They starved the Axis powers of supplies and launched successful air attacks on Germany and Japan.
- Invasion of USSR- War with Russia meant that Germany would fight on two fronts. The refusal of Japan to enter the European war and attack the USSR enabled Stalin to transfer troops from Asia for use to meet the German menace.
- The ill-treatment of the Jews and the provoked opposition to the Nazi Resistance groups in Europe supported each other against the Nazis. They jointly sabotaged Germany.
- Poor strategies by the Axis Powers. Japan failed to realise the importance of aircrafts and concentrated more in building battleships. Germany miscalculated the severity of the Russian winter when she launched "Operation Barbarossa (1941)" which ended in disaster for Germany. Germany also failed to restore her air power in order to deal with the menacing bomb attacks of 1944 and 1945.
- The Axis powers fought on many battle fronts which overstretched their resources.

Italy was incompetent and she constantly drained Germany's resources.

Resistance movements in occupied countries like France provided valuable intelligence against Germany.

- Hitler refused to follow advice from his generals.
- Britain was helped by Commonwealth countries e.g. Australia.

## 15.3 RESULTS OF THE SECOND WORLD WAR

### 15.3.1 Political results

The Allied powers won the war and the USA and the Soviet Union gained the most. The USA's superpower status was strengthened. In 1945 the Allies created the United Nations Organisation (UN) to prevent another world war to replace the League of Nations. In 1949 the North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (NATO) was formed to protect European Nations from threats by communist countries. The Soviet Union took over the eastern European countries it had liberated from the Germans. The war strengthened Stalin's rule. The German people's defeat by the Soviet people led to the Cold War. The USA and the Soviet Union engaged in the Cold war power struggle. Germany was divided into East and West Germany as was Berlin the capital city. The United Nations partition plan for Palestine led to Israel's independence in 1948, which benefited the Jewish people. In 1941 Germany and Italy split Yugoslavia into Croatia, Bosnia and Herzegovina. North Korea and South Korea were divided and this later led to the Korean War. The Second World War led to the four-year civil war in China that allowed the communists to take power. European empires declined and the USSR and the USA rose as Super Powers. Europe was divided into the USA led western bloc and the USSR led eastern bloc- a cold war situation. Nuclear arms race developed between the USA and the USSR. Independence was granted to India, Indonesia, the Philippines and the Arab nations. Communism developed in South Eastern Asia and China became a super power. Italy lost her African colonies and gave up her claims to Albania and Abyssinia (Ethiopia). Russia got territories from Czechoslovakia and Finland as well as Estonia, Latvia and Eastern Poland. She also took Bessarabia and Northern Bukovina from Rumania. Trieste, claimed by both Italy and Yugoslavia was declared free territory protected by the League of Nations. Japan withdrew from China and surrendered territory acquired from the Far East. Hitler's top ranking officials were tried at Nuremberg. Rise of African Nationalism as inspired by European countries' fight against fascist domination.

### 15.3.2 Economic results

The USA emerged as the world's greatest economic power. The economy of Europe collapsed and much of the European industrial infrastructure collapsed. The European coal and steel community (which became the European Economic Community and European Union) was formed. A new global monetary system which

replaced the US dollar became the most powerful currency in international trade. The World International Bank was created. Europe incurred huge war debts. At the Yalta conference, Germany was made to pay reparations to the Allied powers (these were in the form of goods). Many inventions developed rapidly for wartime use, such as the radar, engines, jets and atomic energy. The German resources were plundered by Russia who wanted Germany to pay for the damages she had caused on Russia. The three Western zones of the divided Germany were merged to form a single economic unit which was prosperous. In 1948 the Soviets, angered by the affluence in West Berlin, Tried to block supplies to West Berlin, hence the Berlin Wall. This was called the Berlin Blockade. The Western allies responded by using air transport to transport their supplies. This was called the Berlin airlift (Airlifting food to West Berlin). German scientists were taken away by the Americans and the Russians to develop technology in those countries. German industries were broken up causing unemployment. There was uneven development between the Russian and American controlled zones.

### 15.3.3 Social results

Lives were lost during the Second World War, it is estimated that between 40 and 50 million people died. Millions more were wounded and maimed. Infrastructure such as houses, factories, cathedrals, roads, railways and harbours were destroyed. About 21 million people became refugees. Some of these people were taken from their homes and were taken to Germany where they became labourers. Some were put in concentration camps while others were forced to flee before the invading armies. The atrocities caused by the Nazis led to the emergence of human rights as an area of great concern in international affairs. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) was then drafted in 1948. Jews got a new home in Israel. Some re-education was attempted, the Americans tried to remove the ideas of German superiority from the German textbooks. Diseases especially cancers developed from the effects of radio activity from atomic bombs dropped at Hiroshima and Nagasaki.



## ACTIVITY 15:4 EFFECTS OF THE SECOND WORLD WAR

### – Research and writing

We that hope you have realised that the results of the Second World War can be divided into economic results, political results and social results. Please note that these results can also be broadly divided into positive and negative results. Now make a list of the social results of the second world war and indicate the positive results and negative results.



## ACTIVITY 15:4 POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- Lives were lost during the Second World War an estimate of between 40 and 50 million people is believed to have died. **NEGATIVE**
- Millions more were wounded and maimed. **NEGATIVE**
- Infrastructure such as houses, factories, cathedrals, roads, railways and harbours were destroyed. **NEGATIVE**
- About 21 million people became refugees. Some of these people were taken from their homes and were taken to Germany where they became labourers, some were put in concentration camps while others had been forced to flee before the invading armies. **NEGATIVE**
- Diseases especially cancers developed from the effects of radioactivity from atomic bombs dropped at Hiroshima and Nagasaki. **NEGATIVE**
- The atrocities caused by the Nazis led to the emergence of human rights as an area of great concern in international affairs. **POSITIVE**
- The Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) was then drafted in 1948. **POSITIVE**
- Jews got a new home in Israel. **POSITIVE**
- Some re-education was attempted, the Americans tried to remove the ideas of German superiority from the German textbooks. **POSITIVE**

## SUMMARY

In this unit, you may have realised that the Second World War lasted from 1939 to 1945 although military aggressions by Italy, Germany and Japan had began earlier on. The Second World War was largely influenced by hatred for the Treaty of Versailles, rise of dictators in Europe, weakness of the League of Nations, the Great Depression (1929-1939), German rearmament, nationalism and Hitler's invasion of Poland. The major events of WW2 were Hitler's attacks on Poland, France, Britain and Russia. The Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour influenced the USA entrance into the Second World War. World War 2 resulted in the defeat of the Japanese empire and Nazi Germany and Fascist Italy. Atomic bombs were dropped by the USA on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki killing many people instantly.

## ASSIGNMENT

Imagine that you were a Statesman in Europe at the end of the Second World War write a speech that you would present to the United Nations General Assembly advocating for peace (25)

## TIPS:

In your speech you may include the disastrous effects of the Second World War and the need for reconstruction, talk about the production of nuclear weapons, the capitalist west and the communist east divide, challenge your co-statesmen and the general population on the need for peace and suggest a way forward to a peaceful 21<sup>st</sup> century.

## ASSESSMENT

Your assessment shall consist of four essay type questions to be answered in two hours.

## Assessment Test 1

- 1a) List any 5 effects of the Hiroshima and Nagasaki atomic bombing in 1945 (5)
- b) Describe the results of the Second World War (12)
- c) To what extent was African Nationalism a product of the Second World War? (8)

## SUGGESTED ANSWERS

1a) List any 5 effects of the Hiroshima and Nagasaki atomic bombing in 1945 (5)

- Over 250 000 people died
- Many people were injured
- The radiation produced led to babies born with abnormalities
- Environmental damage
- Infrastructure was destroyed
- Japan immediately surrendered

b) Describe the results of the Second World War (12)

USA became a Super Power. The USA emerged economically stronger than the Western democracies. The Economy of Europe was devastated. Germany was made to pay reparations. The USSR became a Super Power. Germany was divided into two separate nations. East Germany became Communist and West Germany became Capitalist. The United Nations Organisation was formed to safeguard peace. Africans and Asians fought for their independence. Human rights emerged as an area of concern in International Affairs. There were advances in technology.

c) To what extent was African Nationalism a product of the Second World War? (8)

To a greater extent

- The defeat and death of Europeans during the war proved to the Africans that Europeans could be defeated.
- Africans became politically conscious.
- Africans and Europeans fought for democracy hence the Africans hoped for freedom.

However,

- Africans had largely held other grievances such as loss of cattle, loss of land, forced labour, taxation and racial discrimination by the Europeans and ill-treatment by the Europeans.

## SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

- 1a) List any 5 states which were occupied by Germany between 1935 and 1939 (5)
- b) Describe the Japanese attack on Pearl harbour during the Second World War (12)
- c) To what extent did Hitler cause the Second World War? (8)
- 
- 2a) State any 5 battles fought during the Second World War (5)
- b) Describe the Spanish Civil War (12)
- c) To what extent did the Spanish Civil War contribute to the outbreak of the Second World War? (8)

- 3.a) Name any five treaties that were signed by the European Great Powers in the 1930s.(5)
- b) Describe the actions taken by Hitler between 1933 and 1939 which contributed to the outbreak of the Second World War.(12)
- c) To what extent was Hitler responsible for the outbreak of the Second World War in 1939? (8)

## SUGGESTED ANSWERS TO SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

- 1a) List any 5 territories which were occupied by Germany between 1935 and 1939 (5)
- The Saar
  - The Rhineland
  - Austria
  - Czechoslovakia
  - Poland

NB. Add any other territories occupied by Germany.

- b) Describe the Japanese attack on Pearl harbour during the Second World War (12)

In the 1930s Japan pursued an expansionist policy in Asia. Her major target was China and in 1931 she invaded the Chinese province of Manchuria. To keep the Japanese aggression at check, the USA placed a restrictive embargo on her. Rather than giving in to the USA's demands, Japan decided to launch a surprise attack against the USA in an attempt to destroy the USA's naval power. On the morning of December 7 1941, Japan launched a surprise attack on the USA naval base at Pearl Harbour in Hawaii. During the attack, more than 2400 Americans died, 21 battleships were destroyed and more than 188 aircraft destroyed. The attack at Pearl Harbour angered the Americans that the USA declared war on Japan the following day. Thus

the USA had abandoned the policy of Isolation and joined war on the side of the Allies thereby forming the Great Alliance of the USA, France, Russia and Britain.

c) To what extent did Hitler cause the Second World War? (8)

To a greater extent,

- Hitler caused the Second World War because he signed the Rome-Berlin Axis with Mussolini and the Rome-Berlin Tokyo Axis which divided Europe into enemy camps.
- Hitler's desire to dominate the world contributed to the outbreak of the war.
- He wanted to attack the treaty of Versailles.
- Hitler invaded Austria, the Sudetenland, Czechoslovakia and Poland.
- Germany's rearmament.
- Hitler's living space foreign policy targeting Russian territories

However,

- Italian aggression,
- The unfairness of the Versailles Treaty
- Appeasement policy by Britain and France
- The great depression,
- USA isolation policy and
- The Spanish Civil War also caused the Second World War.

2a) State any 5 battles fought during the Second World War (5)

- The Battle of Britain
- Operation Barbarossa
- Battle of France
- Attack on Pearl Harbour
- Invasion of Poland

NB. Plus any other battles fought during the WW2

b) Describe the Spanish Civil War (12)

In 1936 there was a civil war in Spain. The civil war was between the Republican government and the army units under the command of General Franco. The government was supported by the Nationalists who included liberals, trade unionists, socialists, communists and anarchists. Germany and Italy backed General Franco. Hitler and Mussolini desired the creation of a Fascist Spain which would be a useful ally against Britain and France. During the civil war Germany's planes ferried General Franco's forces from Morocco to Spain. Russia supplied arms and advisors to the Spanish government. It became a miniature rehearsal of the Second World War, the German air force (the Luftwaffe) gained valuable experience. Both Germany and Italy tried out new methods of warfare and new weapons, blitzkrieg (lightning war), dive bombing and high level bombing were perfected. Hitler became very confident that Germany will win the war against any army in the world. This war experience boosted the morale of Germany. The policy of non-intervention that was pursued by Britain and France in the Civil War encouraged continued acts of aggression by Germany and Italy. The victory of General Franco gave Hitler much confidence that Germany could do the same to Russia. Russia became suspicious of her partners leading to the 1939 Nazi-Soviet Pact which was very dangerous to Poland. The Spanish Civil War changed the balance of power in Europe. Before the civil war Italy was a member of the Stresa front alongside Britain and France but when the war broke out Italy and Germany had become allies. The prolongation of the war (1936-1939) drained Italy's resources. Italy then fell victim of Hitler's calculations. The two dictators signed the pact of steel which cemented the military relations between them. By signing the pact of steel, the Rome-Berlin axis and the Rome-Berlin Tokyo axis, Hitler became very confident of Italy's support in the event of a war. Europe was slowly but surely drifting into a major war and the line up to the war was gradually forming.

c) To what extent did the Spanish Civil War contribute to the outbreak of the Second World War? (8)

The Spanish Civil War contributed to the outbreak of the war to a greater extent because,

- The German air force gained experience.
- Dive bombing was perfected.
- Hitler became confident of Mussolini's support.
- German morale was boosted.

However,

- the rise of dictators in Europe,
- weaknesses of the League of Nations,
- the unfairness of the Versailles Treaty
- USA Isolation and
- Appeasement by Britain and France also contributed to the outbreak of the Second World War.

3.a) treaties signed

- Anglo-German Naval agreement 1935
- Rome-Berlin Axis 1936
- Munich Agreement 1938
- Nazi-Soviet Pact 1939
- Pact of Steel

b) Actions taken by Hitler which contributed to the outbreak of the Second World War

- He pulled Germany out of the League of Nations in 1933
- Germany rearmament
- He occupied the Saar province
- Hitler tried to takeover Austria but was prevented by Mussolini

- He introduced conscription in Germany in 1936
- He sent troops to occupy the Rhineland in 1936
- Hitler tried out Germany's weapons in the Spanish Civil War
- He took over Austria in 1938 and invaded Sudetenland in the same year
- In 1939, Hitler invaded Poland which was the immediate cause of the Second World War

c) To a greater extent,

- Hitler had an aggressive foreign policy
- He abolished the Treaty of Versailles
- His rearmament programme aimed at implementing his aims of carving out living space for the Germans
- Forced union of Germany and Austria

However,

- Mussolini's aggression and the aggression of the Japanese also contributed to the outbreak of the Second World War
- The policy of appeasement adopted by France and Britain
- Unfairness of the Versailles Treaty gave justification for Germany's aggression

## REFERENCES

- Barnes, T, Mutwira R, Mutuvira, E,K, Mvenge G, Pape J, Prew M, and Pwiti G, (2011) *People Making History, Book Four*. Harare: Zimbabwe Publishing House (ZPH)
- Mavuru S and Nyanhanda-Ratsauka K *Step Ahead history, student's Book 4 (2011)* Longman
- Mlambo A.S *Focus Study Aids "O" Level history revision (1999)* College Press
- Moyana H and Sibanda M *African Heritage Book 4 (2003)* Zimbabwe Publishing House
- Mukanya, S, (2011). *Dynamics of History, Book 4*. Harare. College Press

## Assessment test 1

1.a) List any 5 effects of the Hiroshima and Nagasaki atomic bombing in 1945

# UNIT 16: THE COLD WAR (1948-1991)

- 16.1 Concept of the Cold War
- 16.2 Reasons for the Cold War
- 16.3 Manifestations of the Cold War
- 16.4 Détente period of the Cold War
- 16.5 End of the Cold War
- 16.6 Effects of the Cold War

## Introduction

In the previous unit you may have realised that the Second World War (1939-1945) resulted in the rise of the U.S.A. and the U.S.S.R. as super powers. The two Super Powers pursued different political systems. The U.S.A. was Capitalist and the U.S.S.R. was Communist. There was power rivalry between the two Super Powers as they wanted to dominate each other and spread their doctrines to the rest of the world. By 1948, Socialism had gained influence in most of Central Europe and Eastern Europe. The Capitalist countries such as Britain, France and the USA reacted by mobilising support and resources to contain the threat of Communism. The struggle between Capitalism and Communism is referred to as the Cold War. In this unit you shall look at the Concept of the Cold War, the origins of the Cold War, the Cold War situations, the lessening of tensions among countries involved in the Cold War (also known as the détente) and the impact of the Cold War.



## Objectives

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- explain the concept of the Cold War
- trace the origins of the Cold War
- describe the manifestations of the Cold War
- evaluate the impact of the Cold War on the world



## Key Words

**antagonistic rhetoric** - too much hostile talk.

**bulwark** - a defensive mechanism or position against something hostile.

**capitalism** – a system in which a country’s trade and industry are controlled by private owners for profit.

**communism** – a political system in which all property is owned by the community.

**détente** - a lessening of tensions, especially among nations.

**ideology** - a system of ideas that an economic or political theory is based on .

**international relations** - the way nation conduct business or affairs with each other.

**polarized** - separated into opposite positions.

**rivalry** – the act of competing with another for the same thing.

**satellite states** - smaller countries under the domination or authority of a powerful bigger country.

**socialism** – the theory that a country’s land, transport, industry and other sources of wealth should be controlled by the community as a whole.



## Time

You should spend ten hours on this unit



## Study skills

The concept of Cold War may be new to you and it may also seem very abstract. For you to have a better understating of this unit, you need to research thoroughly, attempt all activities provided and constantly refer to the suggested answers.

## 16.1 Concept of the Cold War

Let us take you back to the end of the Second World War in 1945 for a little while and we hope that it may help you to understand the concept of the Cold War better. During the Second World War, President Roosevelt of the U.S.A. noted that alliance with Russia was crumbling but he had to maintain it for the sake of the war. The two Super Powers had always been suspicious of each other as they had followed opposing social, economic and political ideas. The U.S.A. supported Capitalism and the U.S.S.R. supported Communism. Each country tried to dominate the other (refer to the introduction of unit 16). The military and ideological warfare between the U.S.A. and the U.S.S.R, and their supporters, is called the Cold War. The Cold War therefore refers to the conflict between Communism and Capitalism, conflict between, the Eastern bloc countries such as Russia and China and the Western bloc countries such as Britain, France and the U.S.A. in the years between 1948 and 1991. The war did not involve any weapons and there was no bloodshed in the war. It was a war of political ideas, involving hate speeches between the two opposing sides. It was thus waged on political and economic grounds. The most concrete expression of the Cold War was perhaps the division of Germany into the Communist East Germany and the Capitalist West Germany. Cold War situations were also found in other parts of the world like Korea (1950), Congo (1960-1964), Cuba (1962) and Vietnam (1961-1975).



## ACTIVITY 16.1 MAP STUDY

Study the map and answer the following questions:



**Map showing division of Europe after second world war**

1. Name any five Communist states in Europe after the Second World War.
2. Name any five Capitalist states in Europe after the Second World War.
3. Define Cold War.

### Suggested answers

1. We hope you have given the Soviet Union, East Germany, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, Bulgaria and Hungary as the communist states.
2. You can identify Britain, France, Belgium, West Germany, Austria, Portugal and Italy as the capitalist countries.
3. You can define Cold War as a state of hostility between the Soviet Union and its allies and the Western powers after the Second World War without using arms of war.

(Adapted from A.S Mlambo *Focus Study Aids O level History Revision 1999*)

## 16.2 Reasons for the Cold War

Remember that there was always conflict between Communism and Capitalism. Now let us look at the reasons for this conflict with reference to the period between 1948 and 1991, the period in which the Cold War Era happened.

### 16.2.1 The threat of Socialism and the U.S.S.R's fear of American attack

After the Second World War, Socialism rose sharply and it was threatening to spread to the capitalist strongholds in the U.S.A., Britain, North-western Europe and even beyond. The Western capitalists had always wanted to keep Socialism at bay. They mobilised support and resources to contain it. The first step to contain the spread of communism was taken in early 1948 when Britain, France, the Netherlands and Luxembourg signed a treaty to establish a military bloc known as the Western European Union. This was followed by the formation of the North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (N.A.T.O.) in 1949. N.A.T.O. was formed after a meeting in Washington and it was joined by countries from Europe and America. From the time of its formation, N.A.T.O became a tool of the U.S.A.'s global strategy to contain the spread of Socialism and Communism to Europe and other parts of the world. Soon after the formation of N.A.T.O, Germany was separated into the Capitalist West Germany and the socialist East Germany. In response to the initiatives by the capitalist countries to strengthen and defend their ideology, the socialist countries of the Soviet Union, Poland, Bulgaria, East Germany, Rumania, Hungary, Czechoslovakia and Albania set up the Warsaw Treaty Organisation, popularly known as the Warsaw Pact (1955). The Warsaw Pact became a tool of the Soviet Union to contain American violent behaviour towards other countries. The two military blocs led to the development of tension among countries.

### 16.2.2 The differences between President Harry S Truman of the U.S.A and the Soviet leader, Joseph Stalin.

President Truman of the USA had a bad relationship with Joseph Stalin, the Soviet leader. This was evident from the signing of a U.S.A foreign policy known as the Truman Doctrine, which aimed to help countries under threat from the Soviets to fend off Communism. The Soviet Union also issued the Brezhnev Doctrine, which stated

that the Soviet Union would intervene with force in order to protect communism and its satellites.

### 16.2.3 The nuclear arms race between the U.S.S.R. and the U.S.A.

One of the main issues that strained relations between the Soviet Union and the West was the threat of a nuclear war. The arms race that developed between USA and the Soviet Union was triggered off by the production of an atomic bomb by the Soviet Union in 1949. The Soviet Union felt insecure having been invaded twice by Germany in the twentieth century. The U.S.A. had created and used the atomic bomb against Japan. At this time the U.S.S.R. was determined to create one of its own. The USSR had never been informed of such technology even though she was USA's ally in the war.

### 16.2.4 America's refusal to help Russian's post-war economic reconstruction

Bad blood developed between the U.S.A and the U.S.S.R when the then Lend-lease was abruptly terminated by the U.S.A and Russia's request for USA's economic aid for purposes of post-war reconstruction fell on deaf ears. During the Second World War, the U.S.A. supplied war material to the Allied nations through the Lend and Lease programme and this abrupt refusal did not go well with the Russians.

### 16.2.5 Support for proxy-wars (wars in which the USA and the USSR used third parties as substitutes for fighting each other directly)

The U.S.A and the U.S.S.R often wrestled for superiority when it came to the third world countries supporting proxy-wars in which they supplied and advised opposing factions in civil wars. In the conflict between Ethiopia and Somalia, the USA supported Ethiopia and the USSR supported Somalia.

### 16.2.6 U.S.S.R's expansion west into Eastern Europe and broken election promises

Even before the end of the Second World War the Soviet Union had extended her

influence in Europe. Towards the end of the war, the U.S.S.R. quickly consolidated her control of Eastern Europe. The Red Army of the Soviet Union began by influencing the post-war elections. Although the non-communists could still gain some votes, most of the votes went to the Communists as the voting was not free and fair. The U.S.A, who had not resisted the Russian expansion before changed policy and started to resist as was evidenced by the Marshal Plan.

### 16.2.7 The Marshal Plan

The U.S.A. became alarmed by the growth of communism in Europe and put in place a plan known as the Marshal Plan in order to counter the spread of communism. This was an economic support programme funded by the U.S.A. Under the programme, the U.S.A. gave relief money to war-torn democratic countries in order to rebuild their economies. They did not give any money to the Soviet Union and any of its satellites. The U.S.A's motivation for doing this was to provide themselves with trading partners and to economically isolate the Soviet Union.



### ACTIVITY 16.2 RESEARCH AND WRITING

Undertake some research and find out how the Soviet Union helped Zimbabwe liberation movements in the struggle for independence. Write your findings in your journal.

#### TIPS:

You may need to consult some liberation war veterans in your area.

- 1a. Name any five members of NATO and five members of the WARSAW Pact.
- b. Describe the Brezhnev and the Truman doctrines.
- c. How far did the nuclear arms race create tension between the Capitalist West and the Socialist East?

### Suggested answers

- 1a. We hope that you have given Britain, France, Belgium, Netherlands, Luxemburg, the USA and Portugal as the NATO members and the Soviet Union, Albania, Bulgaria, Hungary, the German Democratic Republic, Poland and Romania as the WARSAW Pact members.

b. The Truman doctrine was issued by the USA under the leadership of President Harry Truman. The USA adopted a policy that justified military and political intervention in any country where it was believed that there were forces hostile to capitalism and American interests. Under this policy, American aid was availed to any country which was threatened by communist aggression. Being guided by the same policy, the USA supported President Mobutu Sese Seko against his rivals Patrice Lumumba and Laurent Kabila in the Democratic Republic of Congo. Similarly, the Brezhnev doctrine was issued by the Soviet Union in response to the issuance of the Truman doctrine by the USA. The Soviet Union also adopted a policy to intervene wherever there were threats to the Soviet interests and Communism. Following the Brezhnev policy, the USSR intervened in Hungary, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Afghanistan and Cuba to defend and strengthen the Communist governments. Furthermore, the Soviet support for anti-colonial struggles in Africa, Asia and Latin America was motivated by the desire to extend the influence of Communism.

c. To a greater extent,

- The nuclear arms race increased tension between the USA and the USSR
- The USSR was concerned about its security
- When the USA created and used the atomic bomb against Japan, the USSR became determined to create one of its own
- Both the USA and the USSR built up huge arsenals of Intercontinental Ballistic Missiles (IBMs)
- When the USA developed the hydrogen bomb, the USSR developed one too
- Tension continued to grow when the USA moved its bombers into Europe
- The USA was also threatened when the USSR stockpiled nuclear weapons in Cuba

However,

- Power rivalry between the USA and the USSR
- The spread of communism
- Differences in economic and political ideas also contributed.

## 16.3 Manifestations of the Cold War

### NOTE IT:

Cold War situations were found in various parts of the world and here are some important ones:

### 16.3.1 The North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (NATO) and the Warsaw Pact

We hope that you still recall that the world became divided into two hostile camps namely the Western Capitalist countries, led by the U.S.A. and the Eastern Communist countries, led by the Soviet Union and also that the hostile post-war situation was referred to as the Cold War. In this climate of suspicion, the two camps established two rival military groupings known as NATO (for the Western bloc countries such as Britain, France and Belgium) and Warsaw Pact (for the Eastern bloc countries such as the USSR, Bulgaria, Hungary and Romania). The two camps confronted each other over Europe until the end of the Cold War in the 1990's. NATO was established in Brussels in 1948 by Britain, France, Belgium, Netherlands and Luxembourg. These countries signed the Brussels treaty in which they agreed to work jointly for their common good. NATO was later joined by the U.S.A. and Canada and many other European countries. The Allied members of NATO also included groups such as ANZUS, SEATO and the Baghdad pact. In response to NATO, the Communist countries, under the leadership of the Soviet Union established the Warsaw Pact in Poland. The members agreed to assist each other in the event of an attack on any one of them. They agreed to set up a joint military command and to work for collective security. The potential danger of armed conflict between the two defence pacts remained a threat throughout the Cold War. However, the two pacts negotiated to control the arms race resulting in the signing of disarmament agreements such as the 1955 nuclear ban treaty, the 1968 non-proliferation of nuclear weapons agreement, SALT 1 and SALT 2. The collapse of the Soviet Union in the 1990s lessened the threat of war which had hung over the world since 1945.

### 16.3.2 The Truman and the Brezhnev doctrines

Under the leadership of President Truman the U.S.A adopted a philosophy that justified military or political intervention in any country where it was believed that there were forces hostile to capitalism and American interests. Guided by such a philosophy, the U.S.A supported oppressive capitalist and military regimes in the Third world as

long as the regimes were believed to be fighting Socialist and Communist-inspired forces. This explains why the U.S.A. failed to reconcile with Communist Cuba under Fidel Castro, Nicaragua under Daniel Ortega, Chile under Salvador Allende and the MPLA government of Angola under Augustino Neto and Dos Santos. On the other hand, the Soviet Union as the protector of socialism, also adopted an interventionist policy whenever there were perceived threats to Soviet interests and communism. The main proponent of this policy was Leonid Brezhnev. The Soviet Union intervened in Hungary, Czechoslovakia, Afghanistan and Poland to defend and strengthen the Communist regimes. Similarly, the Soviet support for anti-colonial struggles in Africa, Asia, Latin America and the Middle East was partly motivated by the desire to extend the frontiers of Socialism and Communism.



## ACTIVITY 16.2 Causes of the Cold War.

1. State any five reasons for the Cold War.
2. How do you blame the U.S.A. and the U.S.S.R. for the Cold War?

### Suggested answers

1. Reasons for the Cold War
  - Power rivalry between the USA and the USSR
  - USA dread for communist attack and the USSR's fear of American attack
  - USA's refusal to help in Russia's post-war economic reconstruction
  - USSR's fear of America's atomic bomb
  - USSR's expansion into eastern Europe and broken elections promises
2. You may have realised that the USA can be blamed for
  - Determination to crush communism
  - Involvement in the nuclear arms race
  - Becoming a member of the NATO pact

- Desiring to extend the influence of capitalism through supporting proxy wars among the third world countries
- Refusal to help in Russia's post-war economic reconstruction
- Issuance of the Truman doctrine and the Marshall plan

Similarly, the USSR can be blamed for

- Involvement in the nuclear arms race
- Desire to extend the influence of communism
- Becoming a member of the WARSAW pact
- Supporting proxy-wars in the third world
- Issuance of the Brezhnev doctrine

### 16.3.3 The nuclear arms race and the Cold War crisis

The differences in political ideas between the Communist countries and the Capitalist countries was also seen in the arms race and the continued build-up of nuclear weapons by the U.S.A. and the U.S.S.R. Bombs, ballistic missiles and cruise missiles were developed by both sides. The world almost got involved in a dangerous nuclear war. The U.S.A. tested a hydrogen bomb and the U.S.S.R. developed one too. The U.S.A. then moved her bombers into Europe. West Germany was allowed to re-arm and join NATO. Russia responded by forming the Warsaw Mutual Defence Pact with its buffer zone neighbours.

### 16.3.4 The Korean Crisis (1950)

Korea became an area of conflict between NATO and the Warsaw Pact. At the end of the Second World War American troops had landed in South Korea and the Russian troops had landed in the north. Korea had been divided into two along the line of latitude which is 38 degrees north of the equator. A Communist regime had been established in the north and a capitalist regime in the south. On 25 June 1950, North Korea invaded the south in a bid to bring about unification through force. The U.S.A. believed that the invasion had been instigated by Russia and China. In an attempt

to contain Communism, the U.S.A. ordered her troops based in Japan to help South Korea against the military aggression by North Korea. The U.S.A. appealed to the United Nations (UN) to support the use of force in Korea. A number of NATO countries provided troops for the war in Korea. The U.S.A. provided most of the troops. The U.S.A.'s attack on North Korea did not go well with China. In October 1950, China attacked South Korea and the American troops based there. The American military commander in Korea wanted to wage an atomic war against China but other NATO members objected. The new American president, General Eisenhower, was determined to end war with Korea and he signed the agreement which maintained the frontier between North South Korea along the 38 degrees latitude.

### 16.3.5 The Congo Crisis (1960 – 1962)

Yes, the Cold War also manifested in Congo in Africa. The Congo crisis was a period of political conflict in the Congo Republic. The crisis led to the assassination of Patrice Lumumba, the Marxist leader of Congo. Congo had been granted political independence in 1960 and shortly after, there was political chaos in the country. The province of Katanga declared a separate state under the rebel leader Moise Tshombe. The secessionist state was supported by Belgium and the Belgian mining companies. Lumumba turned to the United Nations for help. The United Nations sent a force of 8 000 UN troops not to attack Katanga but as a show of force. This angered Lumumba and his supporter, Russia. The Russian leader, Nikita Khrushchev, openly criticised the UN Secretary General for inaction. Lumumba turned to the Soviet Union for support and he was given military aircraft to suppress the rebellion. However, Lumumba was overthrown and arrested. He was later captured by the forces of Tshombe and assassinated in January 1961. In the chaos that followed the assassination of Lumumba, Colonel Joseph Mobutu took over power. He had changed his name to Mobutu Sese Seko. He on to rule for almost thirty years. Mobutu became a firm defender of Western interests against Communism.

### 16.3.6 The Cuban Missile Crisis (1962)

Cuba was another Cold War battlefield. The Cold War was right at the doorstep of the USA. What a challenge to the USA! The exiled Cubans had failed to topple the regime of Fidel Castro despite having the support of the U.S.A. Cuba looked to the Soviet Union for military support. The Soviet leader, Nikita Khrushchev offered to deploy

intermediate range ballistic missiles at the Bay of Pigs in order to strengthen Cuba's defence against USA. The Russian ships carrying the ballistic missiles were spotted by the American spy planes. The U.S.A. threatened to bomb the Soviet missiles in Cuba and the world was on the verge of a nuclear war. The Secretary General of the United Nations U Thant appealed for restraint from both parties. Khrushchev agreed to remove the missiles and dismantle the sites. President Kennedy also agreed that the U.S.A. would not invade Cuba again and undertook to disarm the Jupiter missiles in Turkey which were targeted at the Soviet Union. That ended the Cuban missile crisis.

### 16.3.7 The Vietnam Crisis (1961-1975)

Another Cold War situation was in Vietnam. The U.S.A. intervened in Vietnam in order to prevent and contain the expansion of Communism in Indo-China thereby precipitating one of the most protracted wars between 1961 and 1975. From about 1941, the Marxists in Vietnam organised resistance against French colonialism. They formed army units which became the People's Liberation Army (PLA). The Vietnamese Marxists received military support from the Soviet Union. In May 1954 the French were defeated and they withdrew from Indo-China. Laos and Cambodia were granted political independence. Vietnam was divided into two states – communist North Vietnam under Ho Chi Minh and Capitalist South Vietnam under Ngo Dinh Dien.

The U.S.A. intervened in Vietnam in order to resist Communism and protect her own interests. She supported South Vietnam and supplied military advisers, financial and military equipment to strengthen the Capitalist government of Ngo Dinh Dien. The Communists grouped together and formed the National Liberation Front (NLF) which pressed for democratic reforms and unity with North Vietnam. When their demands were not met they organised armed confrontation with the support of Ho Minh's North Vietnam, China and the Soviet Union. In 1961, the U.S.A president, John F Kennedy, authorised the policy of limited intervention in Vietnam. He introduced the concept of 'safe villages' intended to isolate the guerrillas (the Viet Cong) in order to starve them. However, the policy failed because most of the guerrillas were peasants who had to work inside the 'safe villages'. President Kennedy's successor Lyndon Johnson believed that the Viet Cong were supplied by Ho Chi Minh and undertook to cut off their supplies. He sanctioned the bombing of North Vietnam. American troops were sent to Vietnam and the Vietnamese towns and cities were

mercilessly bombed. However, the Viet Cong were very strong and America lost many soldiers. Many Americans were infuriated and they campaigned for withdrawal from Vietnam. President Nixon was under a lot of pressure from the Americans and planned for the gradual withdrawal from Vietnam. He adopted the policy of training the Vietnamese to defend themselves before the Americans could withdraw. There was increased public pressure to speed up the policy of withdrawal and in January 1973, a peace treaty was signed in Paris. The treaty provided for the cessation of hostilities, withdrawal of American troops, release and exchange of prisoners of war and respect for the frontier along the 17 degrees latitude by both North and South Vietnamese authorities.

The Viet Cong continued their guerrilla attack on South Vietnam which fell to the Communists in April 1975. North and South Vietnam became a united country under the communist regime of the Chi Minh. Laos and Cambodia also became communist. In spite of American military support, the conflict between communism and capitalism was far from over.

## 16.4 Détente period of the Cold War (1975-1989)

### TIP:

The détente period of the Cold War was a period of reduced tension between the East and the West. It was a period of marked improvement in international relations which ran from the mid-1970s to the late 1980s. Both the Capitalist West and the Communist East seemed to have realised the need for peaceful co-existence and co-operation among states despite their differences in social systems and political ideas. Meetings between the Socialist and the Capitalist leaders were held in many parts of Europe to form the basis for peace. The most famous of these meetings was perhaps the 1975 meeting that was held in Helsinki, Finland. At the meeting, important resolutions were agreed on. These were to respect the borders of other countries and not to intervene in other countries' affairs; respect for human rights and fundamental freedom and cooperation among states. However, these noble principles took long to implement. This was because of suspicions and differences between the East and the West worsened by continued military competition.

There was also a marked change in the nature of international relations in the 1980s.

This was a result of several principal factors. Firstly, there was the rise of Mikhail Gorbachev of the Soviet Union. He developed the philosophy of reorganisation and “new political thinking” in international relations. Under Gorbachev the Soviet Union championed constructive cooperation among states. He campaigned against the arms race and nuclear war. The Soviet leadership had come to realise that a nuclear war cannot be won, and must therefore never be fought. In the new Soviet foreign policy, emphasis was on the resolution of regional conflicts through peaceful negotiations and non-intervention in the internal affairs of other nations.

Secondly, the rise of anti-nuclear war movements in both Socialist and Capitalist countries played an important role in easing tension between East and West. The representatives of all social classes participated in the peace movements. They campaigned and demonstrated for peace and nuclear disarmament. In Britain a peace movement known as the Campaign for Nuclear Disarmament pressured the western governments to abandon nuclear weapons. The movement held mass demonstrations and rallies to preach the disarmament message. Every year at Easter they organised marches to London from an atomic research station at Aldermaston to drive its point home. Super Power arms race funding proved to be economically costly to the Soviet Union’s budgetary needs.

Similarly, in June 1983 the world assembly for Peace and Life against Nuclear War was held in Prague, Czechoslovakia. It was attended by representatives from 132 countries and they appealed to the U.S.A. and the Soviet Union to reduce all types of nuclear weapons and to stop the further production of armaments, both conventional and nuclear.

Lastly, the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) comprising of the newly independent states and developing countries also played a major role in the campaign for peace. Since its first summit in 1961, NAM had advocated peace, disarmament and an end to the development of military blocs. Through resolutions and appeals, NAM put pressure on the U.S.A. and the Soviet Union to end the arms race and to participate peacefully in global politics and economic development. At its 8<sup>th</sup> summit in Harare in 1986, NAM made a strong appeal to the U.S.A. and the Soviet Union to conclude an international treaty on the prohibition of the threat to nuclear weapons, and to stop the production, stock-piling and development of nuclear weapons. A strong appeal was made to the Soviet Union to withdraw its troops from Afghanistan.



## ACTIVITY 16.3 The Détente period

- 1a. Name any five nuclear weapons manufactured during the nuclear arms race.
- b. Describe role played by Mikhail Gorbachev of the Soviet Union in improving the international relations in the 1980s.
- c. To what extent was the lessening of tension between the U.S.A. and the U.S.S.R. inevitable?

Explain your answer.

### Suggested answers

- 1a.
  - ballistic missiles
  - atomic bombs
  - hydrogen bombs
  - cruise missiles
  - robots
  - radars
- b.
  - Mikhail Gorbachev introduced liberalising reforms of openness and reorganisation
  - He ended the Soviet involvement in Afghanistan
  - He refused to use the Soviet army to support the declining Warsaw Pact member countries governments.
  - Gorbachev also championed constructive cooperation among states

- He campaigned against the arms race and nuclear war
- He emphasised resolution of regional conflicts through peaceful means
- He proposed non- intervention in the affairs of other nations

c.

To a greater extent

- Change of USSR policy under Gorbachev
- Near outbreak of nuclear war
- Calls for the end of the nuclear arms race by NAM among other organisations.

However,

- The USA and USSR continued to use third parties in the third world as substitutes for fighting directly
- Continued manufacturing and testing of nuclear weapons.

## 16.5 The end of the Cold War

A more positive, peaceful and stable relationship between socialism and capitalism, and between the U.S.A. and the Soviet Union developed in the 1980s. This was reflected in a number of ways. These include the signing of the intermediate Nuclear Force Treaty (NFT) in 1987 and the Strategic Arms Reduction Treaty (SALT) in 1991; the withdrawal of the Soviet troops from Afghanistan; the resolution of the Angolan conflict leading to the independence of Namibia, and the establishment of regular communication and consultation between Moscow and Washington on bilateral and global issues. The two Super Powers finally ended the Cold War at the Malta meeting on December 2 and 3, in 1989. Following the pro-democracy riots in East Berlin and the collapse of the socialist state in 1990, the evidence of conflict between East and West, the Berlin Wall, was pulled down. With the disintegration of the Soviet Union, and the collapse of Communism in the satellite socialist states, the Cold War was virtually over.



*This image and the tearing down of the Berlin Wall in general are symbolic of the end of the Cold War in 1990.*

## 16.6 Effects of the Cold War

The Cold War impacted society politically, economically and socially both negatively and positively. In this section we shall look at these socio-economic and political effects under negative and positive effects.

### 16.6.1 The negative effects of the Cold War

The Cold War divided the world into two, according to the conflicting political ideas namely Communist and non-Communist. Regional conflicts and civil wars attained international status due to the political interests of the “superpowers” and therefore more lives were lost, as what happened in the Korean War, the Chinese civil war and the Syrian civil war. The rebels created terrorism as in the case of ex- Afghan and ex- Syrian civil wars. In addition, old nations such as Germany, Korea, China, Vietnam and

China were divided which created long lasting tensions between and within nations. Adverse hostility between nations curbed development and developed mistrust and genuine hatred among their people. Nations were involved in nuclear armament production in fear of external aggression and also to show strength. The production of nuclear armaments by North Korea, China, Israel and South Africa was bloc related. Nuclear stockpiles of the world skyrocketed with the U.S.A and the U.S.S.R amounting for 15 000 nuclear weapons. Lastly, the Soviet glory was lost and millions of people were left unemployed resulting in the deterioration of the Soviet economy.

### 16.6.2 The positive effects of the Cold War

Positively, the Cold War led to improvements in the fields of science and technology. The space race was amazing, from launching a rocket into the orbit in 1957 to landing a man on the moon in 1969. The inventions of computers, satellites, radars, robots and space technology, which were initially done to outsmart the enemy, benefited society a lot. Furthermore, the Cold War led to the rise of nations which supported neither capitalism nor communism (non-aligned nations). Many newly formed nations in Africa and Asia became sick of the wars that they had seen and forcibly been part of. They started a third bloc which supported neither the Eastern bloc nor the Western bloc. They had their own interests as Non-Aligned Movement (NAM). More so a strong European Union was created after people understood that war is extremely bad for people. Europe changed its course from selfish national interests to international cooperation. Finally, the Cold War resulted in fewer wars as compared to the pre-Second World War period. This was mainly so because of fear of the increasing production of nuclear weapons and the third world war.



#### ACTIVITY 16.4 Research

Research and find out how the Cold War affected Zimbabwe and her neighbouring countries in the region before and after independence. Report your findings in your journal.

1. Identify any five events of the Cold War.
2. Did the people benefit from the Cold War?

## Suggested answers

1.

- The Cuban missile crisis
- The Vietnam crisis
- The Congo crisis
- The Korean crisis
- The nuclear arms race

2. To a lesser extent

- Improvements in the fields of science and technology
- Rise of non-aligned countries
- Fewer wars

However,

- The Cold War divided the world into two hostile camps
- Many people died in the wars to extend the influences of the USA and the USSR
- Loss of Soviet glory left many people unemployed
- The USA has almost become the ultimate Super Power interfering in international issues without UN approval e.g. ZIDERA against Zimbabwe.

## SUMMARY

In this unit, you realised that the unfriendly post- second-world war situation was referred to as the Cold War. The origins of the Cold War can be traced back to the fear of communist expansion to other parts of the capitalist world. Mistrusting each, the communist countries and the capitalist countries established enemy military groupings. The capitalist countries, led by the U.S.A established the North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (NATO) and the Eastern or Communist countries established the Warsaw Pact. The military and ideological division between the East and the West

found further expression in the continued build-up of nuclear armaments and the arms race between the U.S.A and the Soviet Union. The Cuban missile crisis (1962) almost brought the world into a nuclear war. Global protests against nuclear weapons resulted in the lessening of tension between the East and the West. International relations improved in the 1980s and the Cold War came to an end in 1991. The end of the Cold War was marked by the collapse of the Soviet Union and uniting East Germany and West Germany.

## READING LIST

Mlambo A.S *Focus study Aids "O" Level History Revision* (1999) College Press

Moyana H and Sibanda M *The African Heritage Book 4* (2003) Zimbabwe Publishing House.

## ASSIGNMENT

Write an imaginary speech for Mikhail Gorbachev of the Soviet Union explaining why and how he helped to bring the Cold War to an end (25).

## ASSESSMENT

1a) Name any five countries which were involved in the nuclear arms race during the Cold War. (5)

b) Korea was a "hot spot" in the Cold War. Describe the events there from 1945 to 1953. (12)

c) To what extent was the USA to blame for the Cold War? (8)

## SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

1a) State any five causes of the Cold War. (5)

b) Describe the Berlin airlift and the Cuban missile crisis during the Cold War. (12)

c) To what extent did the world benefit from the Cold War? (8)

2a) Identify any five Cold War situations. (5)

b) Outline the formation of the North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (NATO) and the Warsaw pact. (12)

c) To what extent was the U.S.A to blame for the Cold War? (8)

3a) Name any five members of the Warsaw pact. (5)

b) Describe the Truman and the Brezhnev doctrines during the Cold War? (12)

c) To what extent was the U.S.S.R to blame for the outbreak of the Cold War? (8)

4a) State any five negative results of the Cold War. (5)

b) Describe the détente period of the Cold War. (12)

c) To what extent did Mikhail Gorbachov contribute to the end of the Cold War? (8)

5a) Identify any five weapons which were produced during the nuclear arms race. (5)

b) Describe the positive and the negative effects of the Cold War. (12)

c) To what extent did the nuclear arms race contribute to the end of the Cold War? (8)

## SUGGESTED ANSWERS TO ASSESSMENT TEST 1

1a) Name any five countries which were involved in the nuclear arms race during the Cold War.

- U.S.S.R
- U.S.A
- China
- North Korea
- Cuba

## b) Events in Korea from 1945 to 1953

- Conflict between NATO and the Warsaw Pact in divided Korea
- Communist regime in North Korea and Capitalist regime in South Korea
- North Korea invaded South Korea in a bid to force unification
- USA believed the invasion was instigated by China and Russia and ordered the USA forces in Japan to help South Korea
- USA appealed to U.N to use force in Korea
- NATO forces were deployed to Korea
- Russia and China were provoked and warned that they would intervene
- China attacked South Korea
- USA speculated extending war to China and use atomic bombs
- Idea was not supported by other NATO allies especially Britain
- Eisenhower signed peace agreement
- Boundary between North and South Korea was restored

## c) To a greater extent

- USA wanted to crush Communism
- She deployed forces to Korea to help South Korea
- Appealed to UN to use force
- NATO Forces deployed to Korea
- USA wished to use atomic bombs and extend war to China

However,

- The Soviet Union and China supported North Korea's aggression on South Korea
- Britain did not support NATO involvement in the conflict as the USA desired.

## SUGGESTED ANSWERS TO SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

1a) State any five causes of the Cold War

- Ideological differences between the U.S.A and the U.S.S.R
- Economic competition between the U.S.A and the U.S.S.R
- Power rivalry between the U.S.A and the U.S.S.R
- U.S.A's fear of communist attack and the U.S.S.R's fear of American attack
- Support for proxy wars by the U.S.A and the U.S.S.R
- Gaining domestic support for political gain

b) Describe the Truman and the Brezhnev doctrines

- President Truman had hatred for Joseph Stalin and the Soviets.
- He adopted an interventionist policy where there were forces hostile to capitalism and American interests
- He justified military and political intervention against the forces of Communism
- Truman signed the U.S.A foreign policy known as the Truman doctrine
- The Truman doctrine vowed to help countries under threat from the Soviets.
- The U.S.S.R issued the Brezhnev doctrine to counter the Truman doctrine.
- The Brezhnev doctrine decreed that the Soviet Union would intervene with force in order to protect communism and its satellites.
- The Soviet Union intervened in Hungary, Afghanistan Africa and Latin America to spread communism

c) To what extent did the world benefit from the Cold War?

Benefits to a lesser extent

- Developments in science and technology
- Ventures into space

- Rise of Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)
- Creation of a strong European Union (EU)

However,

- The world was divided into Communist and Capitalist camps
- The threat of nuclear warfare
- Proxy wars leading to the death of many people in smaller nations
- Old nations were divided
- Civil wars were encouraged
- Hostility among nations

2a) Identify any five Cold War situations

- The Cuban missile crisis (1962)
- The Berlin airlift (1961)
- The Korean crisis (1950)
- The Vietnam crisis (1975)
- The Congo crisis (1960-1964)

b) Outline the formation of NATO

- Was a military bloc
- For the western countries military security
- A tool for the U.S.A to contain the spread of Communism
- Formed in Brussels
- Later joined by U.S.A
- Joined by ANZUCS, SEATO

c) To what extent was the USA to blame for the Cold War?

To a greater extent

- Hated communism and desired to crush it
- Involvement in proxy wars and the nuclear arms race
- Denied economic assistance to Russia-terminated the Lend-Lease programme
- Issuance of the Truman doctrine and the Marshal plan
- Joining NATO

However,

- USSR and the threat of Communism
- USSR involvement in proxy wars and nuclear arms race
- USSR stockpiling nuclear armaments in Cuba
- Issuance of the Brezhnev doctrine

3a) Name any five members of the Warsaw pact.

- USSR
- Poland
- Hungary
- Czechoslovakia
- The German Democratic Republic

b) Describe the Truman doctrine and the Brezhnev doctrine

- Truman philosophy adopted by President Truman of USA
- Justified military intervention
- Aimed to contain communism
- No aid to USSR and her satellites

- Brezhnev doctrine adopted by USSR
- Military intervention to protect communism
- Communist expansion into capitalist bastions

c) To what extent was the USSR to blame for the Cold War?

To a greater extent

- The threat of Communism
- Expansion eastwards to create a buffer zone.
- Issuance of the Brezhnev doctrine
- Involvement in nuclear arms race
- Involvement in proxy wars

However,

- USA hatred for Communism
- USA desire to destroy Communism
- Nuclear arms race
- The Truman doctrine
- Marshal plan

4a) State any five negative effects of the Cold War.

- Death of many people in proxy wars in smaller nations
- Dividing the world into hostile camps i.e. Communist versus Capitalism
- The threat of nuclear war
- Collapse of the Soviet Union under Gorbachev (1990s)
- Military escalations around the world e.g. Cuban Missile crisis (1962)

b) Describe the détente period of the Cold War (mid 70s- late 90s).

- Cooperation among nations
- Improved international relations
- Noble principles of equality, non-intervention, respect for human rights
- Less antagonistic talk
- Plans to reduce armaments
- The Non Aligned Movement

c) To what extent did Gorbachev contribute to the end of the Cold War?

To a greater extent

- Introduced liberalising reforms of Perestroika (reorganisation) and Glasnost (openness)
- Ended Soviet involvement in Afghanistan
- Refused to use the Soviet army to bolster the faltering Warsaw Pact regimes in Eastern Europe

However,

- The near outbreak of a nuclear war especially 1962 Cuban Missile Crisis.
- Protests against nuclear weapons by the peace movements
- Calls for the end of the nuclear arms race by NAM

5a) Name any five items of military equipment produced during the Cold War.

- Radars
- Robots
- Atomic bombs
- Hydrogen bombs
- Ballistic missiles

b) Describe the positive and the negative effects of the Cold War.

- Developments in the fields of science and technology
- The rise of the Non- Aligned Movement
- Creation of a strong European Union
- Tensions and military escalations
- Threat of nuclear war concept of proxy wars leading to the creation and arming of insurgent forces
- Global terrorism
- Hostility among nations
- Death of many people in smaller nations
- Nuclear arms race
- Collapse of USSR, unemployment, deteriorating economy
- Collapse of former Communist states

c) To what extent did the nuclear arms race contribute to the end of the Cold War?

To a greater extent

- Near outbreak of nuclear war
- Protests against nuclear weapons by peace movements
- Drain on the Soviet Economy

However,

- Efforts of NAM
- The rise of Gorbachev to power in the Soviet Union

# UNIT 17: THE RUSSIAN REVOLUTION (1905-1940)

- 17.1 Background to the Russian Revolution
- 17.2 Causes of the Russian Revolution
- 17.3 Stages of the Russian Revolution
- 17.4 USSR Economic and Social Transformation
- 17.5 Effects of the Russian Revolution

## Introduction

Let us talk about socialism for a little while. We hope you still recall that in Zimbabwe the leading supporters of the Socialist doctrine were Dr Joshua Nkomo, Ndabaningi Sithole and Robert Mugabe amongst others. The Russian Revolution had its origins in the rise of Socialism. Socialist movements had been growing in various countries in Europe. The Bolshevik Revolution in 1917 in Russia was the first successful Socialist Revolution. Russia was the most economically backward nation in Europe when the revolution occurred. Many revolutions since then have taken ideas from the Russian Revolution. In this unit we shall look at the causes of the Russian Revolution and the various stages of the revolution. We shall also look at the policies of Lenin and Stalin in Russia and how the Russian Revolution influenced world events. We hope you will enjoy the unit.



## Objectives

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- outline the causes of the Russian Revolution
- trace the stages of the Russian Revolution
- describe the policies of Lenin and Stalin in Russia



## Key Words

**abdicated** – gave up, withdrew from the throne especially by a king.

**autocracy** – government by an absolute ruler

**philosophy** – set of ideas about society

**purge** – cleaning out or killing of people usually for political reasons or things not liked

**totalitarian** – of or relating to centralised control by an absolute leader; authoritarian; dictatorial; despotic; of or relating to a political regime based on subordination of the individual to the state and strict control of the nation, usually by coercive measures



Time

You need ten hours to cover this unit



Study Skills

Specialised research skills and collaborative approach

## 17.1 Background to the Russian Revolution

Remember that in Zimbabwe the Socialist doctrine was supported by Dr Joshua Nkomo and Robert Mugabe. Socialism as a doctrine first appeared in Europe in the 1820s. Socialists were critical of the negative effects of the Industrial Revolution in Europe. They condemned its exploitative nature which was seen in the harsh working conditions and living conditions of the workers, the employment of women and children in factories and the growing tendency of the rich becoming richer while the poor became poorer. Socialists believed that capitalism was corrupting society by encouraging harmful individualism and cut throat competition. They wanted instead, a system that would promote communalism and equality among people. Babeuf of France, Robert Owen of Britain and Louis Blanc of France are among the important modern socialists before Karl Marx. The theories of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels were the most important influences of socialist movements. In their famous book, *The Communist Manifesto*, Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels suggested that all history represented class conflicts and that the urban proletariat were bound to overthrow all capitalist governments to establish socialist governments everywhere.

## 17.1.2 Russia before the Revolution

Before the Revolution, Russia was ruled by a monarch called the Tsar of the Romanov dynasty. The Tsar was viewed as a divine ruler in a strongly religious Russia who believed that no man on earth could question the Tsar's actions. He was second only to God, and he continued to rule Russia after the fashion of the Middle Ages. There was no national parliament in Russia unlike other European states and the only elected bodies were the village councils (called Zemstvos), which had no influence on how the country was ruled. The Tsar from 1894 to 1917 was Nicholas II. He ruled harshly and silenced any criticism to his rule. He kept a strong police force, controlled the press and watched the activities of the public closely. The economy of Russia became worse during Nicholas' reign. The Russian peasants were very poor and they still worked for the few land owners. During his rule between 1891 and 1893, Russia had some of the worst famines in its history. The factory workers in the growing urban areas became poorer and poorer and were treated badly. Their salaries remained very low while the living and working conditions were very bad. In the 1890s various political groups were organised to try to bring about reforms. Some of the groups used violence to press for reforms but in most cases the government reacted by arresting the opponents and instituting more repressive measures. The Social Democratic Party of Russia introduced the idea of Marxist Socialism. Initially the party concentrated on the economic demands of the workers. Under the leadership of Lenin, the workers became interested in politics. In 1903, the Russian Socialist Democratic Party split into two, the Bolsheviks and the Mensheviks. The two disagreed on what type of revolution was needed to overthrow the Tsar. The Bolsheviks believed that the urban workers must unite with the poor peasants in the countryside to overthrow the land owners, factory owners and bankers and work towards a socialist Russia. The Bolsheviks gained much support among the peasants and the soldiers. The Mensheviks believed that in the end the working class must take control of Russia but because they were weak, they should seek help from the bankers, factory owners and the land owners in overthrowing Tsarism. In 1904, Russia was humiliatingly defeated by Japan in the Russo-Japanese war. The Russian people reacted violently blaming the government for incompetency. From the beginning of 1905, there were violent protests against the Tsarist regime. Industrial workers joined the struggle, and many strikes and demonstrations took place all over the country (the events of that year can be described as a Revolution). In 1913, another wave of strikes swept through the Russian towns of Baku, Moscow, St Petersburg and Warsaw. The disturbances

continued into 1914 when the First World War broke out. There were many armed conflicts between the strikers and the police. Russia was surely moving towards a revolution. When the First World War broke out in 1914, the strikes stopped and the Russians supported the country's war effort. The Bolsheviks did not support the war. The war efforts' effects on the Russian economy would bring suffering to the people. They felt that the war involved Russian workers fighting against workers from other countries instead of uniting to fight capitalism. The conservatives in Russia did not want to fight Germany and Austria-Hungary where monarchs still ruled. Some socialists welcomed the war which they felt would remove these oppressive governments in Germany and Austria-Hungary.

## 17.2 Causes of the Russian Revolution

In the nineteenth century, Russia was still backward. The Russian peasants and workers were suffering under the oppressive rule of the Tsars. The few enlightened Russians formed revolutionary parties such as the Bolshevik party which demanded reforms in Russia. The most extreme of these parties used terror, violence and the assassination of leading politicians to achieve reforms in Russia. Surely there was a revolution in Russia and here are the causes of the Russian Revolution.

### 17.2.1 The Tsar's autocracy

We hope you still remember the government of Tshaka in the Zulu state. Tshaka was an absolute ruler. Absolute rulers came to power in most countries all over the world. The Russian Tsars were absolute rulers. They were viewed by the strongly religious Russians as demigods, nominated and appointed by God. They were believed to be answerable only to God. The Tsar was the executive, the legislature, the judiciary and his words were the law. He had the power of life and death. He declared war and concluded peace. He was the treasury and used the state funds as he saw fit. In Tsarist Russia, liberalism and constitutionalism were unheard of. Only God could limit the powers of the Tsars. The Tsars were very repressive and sometimes corrupt and inefficient. This was a source of grievance by the common people who became determined to remove the Tsars.

### 17.2.2 The rise of Nihilism

As Russia was industrialising, new classes demanded political liberties and under a system which permits no freedom of expression and crushes every attempt to work

for the people's welfare and enlightenment by legal means, the only instrument that remained was terror. Nihilism was terrorism to reduce Tsarism to nothing and make a fresh start in a revolutionary direction. Russia had no option but to resort to terror because there was no representative body (parliament) through which they could express their feelings. Newspapers were heavily censored and police agents moved everywhere to sniff out any underground movement (opposition). The Tsars were determined to rule the country after the fashion of their ancestors of the Middle Ages. The Russians therefore sought to destroy Tsarism by illegal means and terrorism.

### 17.2.3 The Russo-Japanese war

The opportunity to topple Tsarism in Russia arose in 1904 when Russia was involved in a war against Japan. The Russian people capitalised on the Tsar's difficulties to strike. Russia was humiliatingly defeated by Japan and this seemed to prove the incompetence of the Tsars. As such, revolution broke out in Russia in 1905 to topple the Tsar's government.

### 17.2.4 Effects of the First World War (1914-1918)

The First World War was perhaps the most cause of the March revolution in Russia because it united the Russian people and for the first time, the Tsar and the people became one, fighting a common enemy (Germany). However, when Germany proved to be too strong, some Russians started to doubt the wisdom of ever joining the war. The revolutionaries started to look up to the war as an opportune moment for them to overthrow autocracy. Russia was defeated by Germany during the First World War and the Tsar who had taken Russia to war was blamed for the defeat. Tsar Nicholas II became very unpopular among the Russians. The inefficiency of the Tsar's government in managing the First World War and failing to institute land and political reforms. The people's grievances re-activated the pre-1914 latent hostility to the Tsar and his regime. The First World War also disrupted the manufacturing industries and caused shortages and high prices. Machinery and parts to repair them could not be imported from abroad as the Western countries, where Russia's most imports came from were affected by the war. Supplies to Russia stopped and Russia was adversely affected. Prices for goods rose sharply, causing much suffering to the citizens. The situation was worsened by the militarisation of the Russian industries. Militarisation meant that the production of consumer goods was reduced resulting in shortages of commodities and high prices for goods. This hit the masses whose wages were very

low. To add on, Russia lost many skilled workers in the First World War which affected the quality and quantity of goods produced in Russian industries. Worse still, the cheaper and better consumer goods which used to come from abroad (the West) were no longer coming to Russia. Urban dwellers found themselves in very difficult situations. Fuel shortages hit Russia. Russia's major fuel, coal came from abroad and during the First World War imports from abroad came to a halt (for both industrial and domestic uses).

## NOTE:

You can appreciate the significance of the fuel shortages when you realise that the week around 8 March 1917 was one of the coldest in Russian history so fuel shortages worsened the agitations of the week, resulting in the overthrow of the Tsar's regime on 10 March 1917. The distress of the urban workers and the peasants plus the effects of the First World War destroyed the Romano dynasty in Russia. The Great War also disrupted agriculture and caused food shortages and high food prices. Peasants were recruited into the army, oxen and horses were slaughtered for the soldiers and the manufacture of fertiliser went down. The war also disrupted the transport system. Russia depended on railways for her communications. In Europe, she was the poorest served by railway lines. To worsen the situation, some Russian railways were destroyed by the war. More so, new train engines and locomotives could not be imported. Food and goods could not be delivered to where they were needed. Food shortages, shortage of essential goods and high prices were the result.

### 17.2.5 The Democratic Army

During the First World War, the Russian army was ill-equipped, ill-fed and ill-led. The army was demolished by the Germans and it got demoralised. When the revolution broke out in Russia, the demoralised military left the battle fronts and joined strikers against the government.

### 17.2.6 The influence of Rasputin

Rasputin was a bizarre monk at the Winter Palace. He had a lot of influence at the palace. Tsarina Alexandra favoured him because he claimed to be a holy man and because he seemed to be able to ease the effects of Alexis haemophilia (Alexis was Nicholas II's only son and heir to the throne). In 1915 Tsar Nicholas II took personal command of the army and he left the Tsarina in charge of the government. The

Tsarina came under the spell of Rasputin and he virtually became the Prime Minister of Russia. Rasputin frustrated reformers and caused dismissal of reforming ministers. Without reform, revolution was bound to take place. By 1916, Rasputin's influence on the government was so evil that a group of noblemen plotted to kill him.



## ACTIVITY 17.1

- 1a) State any five causes of the Russian Revolution.
- b) Who was Rasputin and what role did he play in the history of Russia?
- c) To what extent did the autocracy of the Tsars contribute to the Russian Revolution?

### Suggested answers

1a) It is correct to say that the Russian Revolution was caused by the following:

- The Tsar's autocracy
- Russia's defeat in the Russo-Japanese war
- The effects of the First World War
- The rise of Nihilism
- The democratic army
- The influence of Rasputin

b) Rasputin was a monk at the Winter Palace in Russia. He was bizarre but had a lot of influence at the palace. He was favoured by Tsarina Alexandra because he claimed to be a holy man. He seemed to be able to ease the effects of haemophilia on Tsar Nicholas II's son and heir to the throne. When Tsar Nicholas II left the Tsarina in charge of the government in 1915, the Tsarina came under the spell of Rasputin. Rasputin virtually became the Prime Minister of Russia. He frustrated reformers and caused the dismissal of reforming ministers. By 1916, Rasputin's influence on the government was so evil that the noblemen plotted to kill him. He was shot and killed by Prince Yusupov and he was dragged to the river and thrown in.

c) To a greater extent

- the Tsars were absolute rulers and repressive
- they used state funds as they saw fit
- liberalism and constitutionalism were unheard of
- sometimes they were very corrupt and inefficient
- the common people hated them for this and they became determined to remove them
- the absence of the Tsar from state affairs while he directed war efforts on the front

However

- The influence of Rasputin
- The democratic army
- The Russo-Japanese war
- The effects of the First World War also contributed
- Hunger suffered by the generality of the people

## 17.3 Stages in the Russian Revolution

Revolution in Russia passed through various stages and each stage had its unique successes and failures.

### 17.3.1 The first Russian Revolution (1905)

The first revolution occurred in 1905. It was sparked off by the events of Sunday, 9 January, 1905, and that came to be known as "Bloody Sunday". Three days before the Bloody Sunday, Tsar Nicholas II was nearly assassinated. On bloody Sunday, a priest called Father George Gapon led a procession to the Winter Palace to petition the Tsar to grant civil liberties and a constituent assembly for Russia. The troops in the palace opened fire, killing several hundred marchers and wounding thousands more. The massacre led to a fury of violence throughout the country. Police, politicians and officials were murdered. Landlords were killed and their land was taken over by the

peasants. Military regiments mutinied. The most famous of the naval mutinies was the seizure of the battleship, *Potemkin*, by its crew. The people in the port Odessa supported them. A general strike paralysed Russia, and committees or soviets of strikers were set up to organise the workers in the main cities. One of these was the Petrograd Soviet which was led by fiery Trotsky, Lenin close ally. The army wavered in its loyalty to the Tsar, who was forced to give way to the demands of the people. In October 1905, the Tsar issued an imperial manifesto that transformed Russia into a constitutional monarchy. A representative body, the Duma, with legislative powers, was set up. Free elections were granted and so were civil liberties. The man responsible for these reforms was Count Witte, who became the first Prime Minister in 1905. However, the reforms of the Tsar were not genuine. He was under pressure, but by the beginning of 1906, he had gained in confidence. The army that had been locked up in Manchuria had returned and looked reliable. The hard fisted General Trepov from Petersburg was appointed commander of the Police Guard. In practice he became the chief in Staff although in theory he was not. Another ferocious General, Orlov took control of the Baltic provinces. Trepov and Orlov together organised counter-revolutionary onslaughts across Russia. The St Petersburg soviet was suppressed and Trosk and Parvas were arrested. Lenin fled to Finland. The leaders of the military and naval mutinies were mercilessly dealt with. Most were shot by the firing squads. "Vigillante" groups beat up, robbed and killed many anti-monarchist suspects including Jews. By 1914, three Dumas had been dissolved and the fourth one in power. Its legislative powers were withdrawn, and Russia was back to square one. The first Revolution had failed and the Revolutionaries resumed terrorism. In 1911, they assassinated Count Peter Stolypin who had succeeded Count Witte as Prime Minister in 1906.

### 17.3.2 Russia and the First World War

In 1913, a wave of strikes swept through the Russian cities of Baku, Moscow, St Petersburg and Warsaw. These strikes continued into 1914. By the middle of the year, there were many armed clashes between the strikers and the police. Russia was moving towards a revolution but the First World War broke out. The strikes stopped and the Russians supported their country's war effort. The Bolsheviks did not support the war feeling that the war involved Russian workers fighting against workers from other countries instead of uniting to fight capitalism. The conservatives in Russia did not want to fight Germany and Austria-Hungary where monarchs ruled.

Some socialists welcomed the war which they felt would remove these oppressive governments in Germany and Austria-Hungary.

### 17.3.3 The February Revolution (1917)

#### NOTE:

The Russian calendar was different from the western calendar, so this period is called the February Revolution although the events took place in March. In the same way, the events of the October Revolution took place in November by our calendar.

#### TIP:

There were two revolutions in Russia in 1917 namely, "The February Revolution" and "The October Revolution". We shall use the correct dates here so the February Revolution took place in March.

In March 1917, conditions in Petrograd were becoming very serious, food was in short supply and expensive; workers were striking and demonstrating in the streets, soldiers (the Cossacks) were refusing orders to disperse the crowds, and even joined them. Local committees called soviets were formed among workers, soldiers and sailors. The strikers were joined by women demanding bread. The fortress prison of Peter-Paul was seized. The revolutionaries set fire to the secret police headquarters. The Duma, which refused to be suspended, elected a committee to rule the country. By March The Revolution had won. Tsar Nicholas II abdicated the throne on 14 March. The royal family was allowed to live in the town now called Sverdlovsk, under house arrest. In July 1918, they were shot and killed as they were regarded as symbols of supreme autocracy.

### 17.3.4 The Provisional Government

The committee of the Duma and the Soviet formed a temporary government under the leadership of Prince Lvov as Prime Minister. The Duma appointed ministers. The most important figure in the provincial government was Alexander Kerensky, who belonged to both the Duma and the Soviet. Kerensky succeeded Lvov as Prime Minister in May 1917. It soon became clear that the Soviet was still fighting for more power. Under pressure from the soviet, the new government announced that there would be a general amnesty (pardon for everyone), freedom of the press and of

speech, equality between different classes and an assembly to decide on the way the country should be ruled in future. During the summer of 1917 the provisional government became more and more dominated by the Soviet. It blundered on, turning most of the population against it. It refused to end the war with Germany despite the terrible losses, and actually ordered a futile offensive and disastrous offensive. The government refused to seize land to share out among the peasants. Starvation mounted, production collapsed and the transport systems crumbled everywhere. Many soldiers died in the war and many more were wounded. In this chaos, Germany found a way of getting Russia out of the war by causing complete internal collapse in a revolution. The German agents secretly slipped Lenin across Europe in a sealed railway coach to Petrograd. The Germans hoped that Lenin would be the spark that would bring down the Provisional Government of Kerensky. Under the leadership of Lenin the Bolsheviks became a truly revolutionary party. Lenin believed that the Provisional Government was bourgeois and so was unable to bring changes to the ordinary people. Lenin wished to bring about a true proletarian revolution as soon as possible. He also felt that the Soviets should control the economy. His catch phrases were, "All power to the Soviets", "Immediate peace with Germany", and "All land to the peasants". When the Bolsheviks tried to seize power in July 1917 they failed and Lenin fled to Finland. The Provisional Government failed to carry out important reforms such as giving land to the peasants. The peasants decided to move on to the estates around them, dividing up the land as they pleased. The soldiers who heard about the land seizures left the front and returned home to get their share of land. In the towns, the workers seized factories and demanded more wages and shorter working hours. In August 1917, Kerensky was attacked by the right wing troops of General Kornilov who wished to overthrow both the Soviet and the Duma, possibly with the intention of restoring the Tsar. To beat off the attack, Kerensky had to pardon the disgraced Bolsheviks and re-equip them with arms. In all the confusion the country fell into greater chaos. Chaos also raged the military fronts. Officers were demoted or shot by soldier Soviets and men from the ranks were elected to take their place. By late summer 1917, the Russian army had almost ceased to exist as a fighting force.

### 17.3.5 The October Revolution (1917)

Kerensky recognised the growing strength of the Bolsheviks. He freed the Bolshevik leaders who had been imprisoned. On 13 September the Bolsheviks won a majority in the Petrograd Soviet, and later became the majority party in the Moscow Soviet. Lenin

who was still in exile began to call for the overthrow of the Provincial Government. Trotsky was elected president of the Petrograd Soviet. Later on Lenin returned from exile to become the new leader of the Russian government with Joseph Stalin as the People's Commissar. On the night of November 6 and 7, Lenin and the Bolsheviks seized all the strategic buildings and declared the end of war with Germany, That land should be distributed to the peasants, that power should be given to the Soviets. Lenin went on to call for an all Russians Congress of Soviets. By these measures Lenin won the majority of the Russians away from Kerensky, whose government collapsed. They spread the propaganda that the Russians were fighting an imperialist Britain and French war against Germany and that they were dying for nothing. The Bolsheviks infiltrated the army and spread the rumour that all peasants were being given land and that those on the front should go home and receive their share. All this disorganised the Russian army and helped in the fall of Kerensky.

### 17.3.6 The Russian Civil War (1918-1921)

The supporters of the Romanov dynasty, the supporters of Kerensky and the Conservative landed gentry all over Russia would not tolerate a Communist government because it threatened to take over their property. They organised themselves and attacked Lenin's government. A civil war started. Lenin's Bolsheviks became known as the Red Army, his opponents became known as the White Army. From 1918 to 1921, the civil war raged in one form or another. Britain, France and Japan half-heartedly joined it against the Bolsheviks. By 1921 the Bolsheviks had firmly established themselves in power. Revolutionary Socialism had won its first foothold in the world. In 1924, Lenin died before he had transformed the Russian economy and society.

## 17.4 The USSR Economic and Social Transformation

### 17.4.1 Lenin's policies

Following the October 1917 Bolshevik Revolution, Lenin implemented drastic measures to transform Russia into a socialist state. He granted the workers control over the factories. Private was confiscated and given to the peasant Soviets. Lenin decreed that only civil marriages were recognised by the state and divorce was made easier. Separation of the church and the state was also decreed by Lenin and religious teaching in schools was ended. Lenin eliminated opposition parties through the use of his secret police known as the CHEKA. Lenin dismissed the Russian Constituent Assembly and renamed the country the Soviet Union in 1922. In 1918, Lenin signed

the Brest Litovsk treaty with Germany and ended Russia's participation in the First World War. During the Russian civil war, the Bolsheviks practised war communism. This meant requisitioning food, from the peasants to feed the urban population, nationalising the private enterprises, abolition of private trade and abolition of money. War Communism was disastrous. It resulted in peasant resistance and shortage of food as peasants reduced production or destroyed their surplus. There were massive strikes by the starving urban workers. The strikes led to a sharp decline in industrial production. Lenin's answer to the Russian problems was the New Economic Policy (NEP). NEP ended war communism and returned Russia to a mild form of capitalism. Under NEP, peasants were allowed to sell their produce in the market. Businesses that had been nationalised were returned to private ownership. Large industries were, however, returned under government control. Following Lenin's death in 1924, a power struggle ensued between Stalin and Trotsky. Stalin won the struggle and proceeded to eliminate the opposition.



## ACTIVITY 17.2 Research

1a) Draw a map to show the Republics that made up the USSR.

b) Describe War Communism and NEP.

1b) War communism was a policy which was adopted by the Bolsheviks during the Russian civil war. Under this policy, food was forcibly requisitioned from the peasants to feed the urban population. Private enterprises were nationalised and private trade was abolished. Money was also abolished. The policy resulted in peasant resistance. There was shortage of food in Russia as the peasants reduced production. Some peasants destroyed their surplus. This resulted in mass starvation. Workers in the cities went on strike and there was a sharp decline in industrial production. The New

Economic Policy (NEP) was introduced by Lenin in 1921. Under NEP, peasants were allowed to sell their produce in the market. Businesses that had been nationalised were returned to private ownership. Big industries however were retained under government control.

### 17.4.2 Stalin's policies

Stalin introduced a number of measures designed to transform the Russian economy. Under the Five –Year plans, Stalin developed the Russian industrial capacity and collectivised agriculture. By 1939, Stalin had successfully transformed Russia from a backward agricultural country to an industrial giant. The post –Second World War period was characterised by the Cold War between the Soviet Union and the western allies led by the USA.

### 17.4.3 Stalin's purges

From 1934 until the end of the 1930s, Stalin executed or arrested many people whom he claimed were spies or enemies of the state. These included most of the Central Committee, most of the army officers and most of delegates to the 1934 Party Congress. More than one million people are believed to have been purged by Stalin. There were many reasons for the purges. For the Five-Year plans to be effective there was no time for criticism. Although Stalin was greedy for personal power, no one criticised him because Russia needed a strong leader, facing the threat of Hitler's Germany. The Bolshevik Party demanded loyalty to the state.



### ACTIVITY 17.3

- 1a) Give an account of Stalin's purges in Russia.
- b) To what extent were Stalin's policies dictatorial?

### Suggested answers

1a) You may have realised that Stalin's purges started in the 1930s when the elimination of kulaks gradually merged into a general reign of terror. Stalin saw enemies everywhere. He lashed out those whom he saw as possible rivals for power starting with the murder of Kirov in 1934. Many old and distinguished veterans of the revolution were arrested on charges of treason and tortured. Tens of thousands of

minor men perished or were sent to labour camps. Thousands of officers of the Red Army were accused of collaborating with the Nazis. They were tortured, tried and were shot or sent to prison camps.

b) To a greater extent

- Peasants were forced into collectives
- Exiling of Trotsky and his eventual murder in the USA
- The press and all media was strictly censored
- Education was controlled by the government
- Learners were indoctrinated on the virtues communism and the communist party
- College professors who opposed Stalin risked losing their jobs and facing imprisonment
- Minority rights were suppressed and the former Russian empire under the Tsar lost autonomy

However,

- Learners were taught technical subjects that helped with industrialisation
- Women rights were promoted and women were allowed to work in the factories
- Western support of the anti-revolutionaries justified his repressive measures

#### 17.4.4 Control of the media

Under Stalin, the mass media were all controlled by the state and was allowed to promote the Stalinist message. Large portions of Soviet history were written to discredit Stalin's rivals as counter-revolutionaries. Photographs were edited to remove the appearance of Stalin's rivals and to glorify Stalin's significance as close to Lenin. Stalin would not tolerate individual creativity that did not conform to the views of the state. Soviet newspapers and radio broadcasts glorified the achievements of communism and Stalin. The arts were also used for propaganda.

### 17.4.5 Education and indoctrination

Under Stalin, the government controlled all education from nursery schools right through the universities. Education was compulsory and every child was entitled to nine years of free education. Learners learnt the virtues of communism and the Communist Party. College professors and students who questioned the Communist Party's interpretation of history or science risked losing their jobs and facing imprisonment. Learners were taught technical subjects that helped with industrialisation. Party leaders in the Soviet Union lectured workers and peasants on the ideals of communism. They also stressed the importance of sacrifice and hard work to build the communist state. State supported youth groups trained future party members.

### 17.4.6 Women Rights

Women were given more rights such as encouraging them to work and also to be a house wife. Women's rights such as allowing women to work in factories benefited the economy because of the influx of new workers.

### 17.4.7 Suppression of Minority Rights

Under Stalin, many minority republics of the former Russian empire under the Tsar lost their autonomy. They were now controlled by the Communist Party in Moscow.

## 17.5 Effects of the Russian Revolution

The Russian Revolution involved the collapse of an empire under Tsar Nicholas II and the rise of Marxian socialism under Lenin and his Bolsheviks. It sparked the beginning of a new era in Russia that had effects on countries around the world. The spread of communism around the world led to World War II and the Cold War. The end of Tsardom gave say to workers and peasants in Russia. About fifteen million people died after the Bolsheviks and anti-Bolsheviks swept Russia. After the revolution, people's freedom was lost and people could not read, write or say whatever they want. People were also not allowed to celebrate religion as religious leaders were murdered and churches were destroyed. People lived in constant fear of the informers and secret police. However, there was improved literacy due to compulsory education. Women gained more rights such as the right to work.



## ACTIVITY 17.4 Research

- 1a) State any five effects of Stalin's social policies.
- b) How did Stalin create a totalitarian government in Russia?

### Suggested answers

1a) You may have realised that the effects of Stalin's social policies were both positive and negative. These were:

- Women were empowered
- Education was transformed and literacy improved due to compulsory education
- Minority groups were suppressed
- Many people died during Stalin's purges
- There was no freedom of religion –religious leaders were murdered and churches were destroyed
- The people lived in constant fear of the informers and the secret police

### SUMMARY

In this unit you may have realised that before 1917 Russia was an autocratic and agriculturally based country under the rule of the Russian Tsars. The last Tsar who was overthrown by the October Revolution was Nicholas II. There were two revolutions in Russia in 1917. The first, led by the Mensheviks, occurred in March. It overthrew Tsar Nicholas II and created a Provisional Government under Prince Lvov. The second, the Bolshevik Revolution, occurred in October. It overthrew the Provisional Government and ushered in a socialist Bolshevik government under Lenin. Lenin implemented sweeping measures to transform the Russian economy. His major measures were War Communism and the New Economic Policy (NEP). Following the death of Lenin, a power struggle ensued between Stalin and Trotsky. Stalin won the struggle and introduced new reforms for Russia. He introduced Five-Year development plans which transformed the Soviet Union from a backward agricultural country to an industrial giant. This was, however, accomplished at great cost to the masses, many of whom had either been dispossessed, imprisoned, exiled or killed for opposing Stalin's policies.

## READING LIST

David Thompson *Europe since Napoleon* (1990) Penguin books

Denis Richards *An illustrated History of Modern Europe 1789-1984* (1985) Longman

Mlambo AS *Focus Study Aids 'O' Level History Revision* (1999) College Press

## ASSESSMENT TEST 1

1a) State any five causes of the Russian Revolution. (5)

b) Describe War Communism and the New Economic Policy (NEP) (12)

c) To what extent was (NEP) a success? (8)

## SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

1a) State any five problems faced by the Russians during the revolution of 1917 in Russia. (5)

b) Describe the Russian Civil War between 1918 and 1921. (12)

c) What were the important results of the Russian Civil War? (8)

2a) Name any five political leaders in Russia between 1905 and 1917. (5)

b) Outline Stalin's policies in Russia during his term of office. (12)

c) To what extent did women benefit from Stalin's policies? (8)

3a) State any five reasons for Stalin's purges in Russia. (5)

b) Describe Stalin's Five –Year development plans in Russia. (12)

c) To what extent were Stalin's development plans successful? (8)

4a) State any five reasons for the Bolshevik revolution in Russia. (5)

b) Describe the Bolshevik Revolution of 1917. (12)

c) To what extent did Lenin contribute to the success of the Bolsheviks in 1917? (8)

5a) Name any political groups in Russia during the Russian Revolution. (5)

b) Outline the causes of the Russian Revolution. (12)

c) Did the people benefit from the Russian Revolution? Explain your answer. (8)

## SUGGESTED ANSWERS TO ASSESSMENT TEST 1

1a) State any five causes of the Russian Revolution.

- The Tsar's autocracy
- The Russo-Japanese war
- The effects of the First World War
- The demoralised army
- The influence of Rasputin

b) Describe War Communism and NEP

War Communism was the Bolshevik strategy of forcing communism into the people. It involved forcibly requisitioning food from the peasants to feed the urban population, nationalisation of private enterprises abolition of private trade and the abolition of money. War Communism was disastrous in Russia. It resulted in peasant resistance. There was shortage of food as the peasants reduced production or destroyed their surplus. Mass starvation set in. The starving workers in the cities went on strike and industrial production declined. The New Economic Policy (NEP) was introduced by Lenin to solve Russia's economic problems. Under NEP, peasants were allowed to sell their produce in the market. Businesses that had been nationalised were returned to private ownership. Heavy industry retained under government control. NEP ended War Communism and returned Russia to a mild form of capitalism.

c) To what extent was NEP a success?

To a greater extent

- Russia recovered from the Civil War
- Food shortages in the cities were eased as peasants sold their produce on the market
- Businesses that had been nationalised were returned to private ownership
- Heavy industry remained under government control

However

- Lenin died in 1924 and NEP came to an end.

## SUGGESTED ANSWERS TO SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

1a) Problems faced by Russia

- Food shortages
- Oppression
- Poverty
- High taxation
- Terror by the Tsar's secret police

b) Describe the Russian Civil War.

The Bolsheviks were involved in a bitter Civil War against the enemies of the Revolution. The counter-revolutionaries included the supporters of the Tsar, people who lost property when the peasants seized land and when many firms were nationalised and the governments of the USA, Britain and France who felt let down by Russia making peace with Germany. The Red Army finally won the Civil War because they were fighting to defend the Bolshevik government which promised them a better life than they had under the Tsar. In addition, Trotsky was a brilliant commander-in-chief for the Red Army. The White army was scattered and disorganised.

c) The results of the Civil War

- The Bolsheviks won the Civil War
- The White refugees were scattered throughout Russia
- The Civil War made the Bolsheviks frightened and suspicious of their enemies inside Russia, and of countries like America and Britain who helped the Whites.

2a)

- Vladimir Illich Lenin
- Joseph Stalin
- Leon Trotsky
- Alexander Kerensky
- Prince Lvov

b) Stalin introduced forced collectivisation of agriculture and industrialisation through the Five-Year plans. The plans were aimed at creating new basic industries and expanding the existing ones. They also aimed to reorganise agriculture so that the government would be able to control food production. Stalin also encouraged cooperatives to trade and market agricultural commodities. He got rid of capitalist classes. Under Stalin, large collective farms were created and towns and buildings were constructed. The Communist Party was strengthened and education was improved. The status of women was improved and industry was developed. The enemies of the revolution were purged and many people were killed during Stalin's purges.

c) To what extent did women benefit from Stalin's policies?

To a greater extent

- Women were emancipated and could work on collective farms
- Some women worked as soldiers and pilots during the Second World War.

However

- women's pay rates dropped from 1930 to 1945
- besides the elites, most women were not in a position to speak out
- women had many roles to play which was very cumbersome

3a) State any five reasons for Stalin's purges.

- Stalin's greed for personal power
- The threat of Hitler's Germany
- The Bolsheviks demanded loyalty to the state
- For the Five-Year plans to be effective
- To eliminate opponents
- Fear of brilliant minds e.g. Trotsky

b) Describe Stalin's Five-Year plans

During the first Five-Year plan agriculture was collectivised and through the use of force the Kulaks (rich peasants) were destroyed. Basic industries such as coal and iron were expanded. Privately owned land was turned into collective farms. The second and third Five-Year plans made quite some progress. Coal, steel, electricity and transport were developed thereby transforming Russia from being a backward country to the world's third largest industrial nation after the USA and Germany. Production of coal and iron increased and consumer goods were manufactured in large quantities. Free health and welfare services were offered and literacy improved. Science, technology and industry expanded laying the foundations to great nuclear and space programmes.

c) How successful were the Five-Year plans?

To a greater extent

- Agriculture was collectivised and industry was expanded

- The production of coal, steel and iron increased
- Consumer goods were produced
- Science, technology and industry were expanded

However,

- Poor harvests
- Loss of lives of those opposed to Stalin's policies
- resistance to collectivisation
- the great depression
- the Second World War and the Cold War affected the Five-Year plans

4a) State any five reasons for the Bolshevik Revolution

- Failure of the Provisional Government to make land reforms
- Desire to make peace with Germany.
- Lenin's desire to bring about a true proletarian revolution
- Effects of the first World War
- Weaknesses of the Provisional Government

b) Describe the Bolshevik Revolution

The Bolshevik power was fast growing in Russia and Alexander Kerensky of the Provisional Government decided to destroy the Bolsheviks. However, the Bolsheviks were quick to strike. The Red Guards (Bolshevik army) seized the telephone exchange, important bridges, railway stations and other important points. They isolated the Winter Palace, entered the building and arrested the ministers. After a futile anti-communist resistance, Kerensky fled to the USA. Lenin took over power and embarked on the reform programme that he had promised the people. Peasants were allowed to keep the land that they had seized. Factory workers were given an eight-hour day. The government took control of industry, banking and transport.

c) To what extent did Lenin contribute to the success of the Bolsheviks?

To a greater extent

- Lenin's propaganda-All power to the Soviets, Immediate peace with Germany and All land to the peasants earned him the support of many Russians who needed reforms
- Lenin secretly trained and armed the Red Guards which seized power from the Provisional Government
- A great strategist

However

- Trotsky was a brilliant commander-in chief of the Bolshevik army
- Kerensky blundered by not introducing reforms
- Germany interfered in the affairs of Russia as a way of getting Russia out of the First World War

5a) Name any five political groups in Russia

- The Social Democrats
- The Social Revolutionaries
- The Anarchists
- The Liberals
- The Octobrists

b) Outline the causes of the Russian Revolution

The Russian Tsars were very autocratic. They were very repressive and sometimes corrupt and inefficient. This was a source of grievance by the common people who became determined to remove the Tsars. Furthermore, as Russia was industrialising, new classes demanded political liberties. The Russo-Japanese war gave the Russians the opportunity to topple the Tsar. The effects of the First World War were also a

factor in the Russian revolution. Russia suffered heavy defeats by Germany and the Russian blamed the Tsar's government for the defeat. They became more determined to overthrow the Tsar's regime. Demoralised soldiers left the battle fronts to join the peasants who were seizing land. The power void left by the Tsar's absence as he concentrated on directing war efforts on the front.

c) To what extent did the people benefit from the Russian Revolution?

To a greater extent

- The repressive Tsarist regime came to an end
- Women were emancipated
- Industry developed
- Literacy improved
- Living standards slightly improved
- Working conditions improved
- When the Second World War broke out the Soviet Union was far able to defend its people and territories

However,

- Many people died during the revolution
- Stalin's government was dictatorial and people lost their freedoms, e.g. Religious freedoms
- People lived in constant fear during the reign of Stalin
- The spread of communism around the world led to the Cold War (1945-1989)
- Many minority Republics of the former Russian empire under the Tsar lost their autonomy under USSR. They were now controlled by the Communist Party in Moscow.

# UNIT 18: COMMUNISM IN CHINA AND CUBA

- 18.1 Background to the Chinese Revolution
- 18.2 Events of the Chinese Revolution
- 18.3 Results of the Chinese Revolution
- 18.4 THE CUBAN REVOLUTION (1953-1959)
- 18.5 Reasons for the Cuban Revolution
- 18.6 Events of the Cuban Revolution
- 18.7 Results of the Cuban Revolution

## Introduction

In this unit we shall examine the rise of Communism in China and Cuba. Under China, we will analyse the reasons for the Chinese Revolution, the various stages of the Revolution and the results of the Revolution. We will specifically analyse the implementation of the communist experiment in China under Mao Zedong. Under Cuba we will look at the reasons for the Cuban Revolution, the stages of the revolution as well as the results of the Revolution. We will analyse the nature of the regimes of Fulgencio Batista and Fidel Castro. We hope you will enjoy the unit.



## Objectives

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- outline the causes of the Chinese Revolution
- describe the struggle between the Communist Party and the Nationalist Party in China
- explain the major developments in China under Mao Zedong
- describe the nature of the Fulgencio Batista regime in Cuba
- outline the stages of the Cuban Revolution
- describe the results of the Cuban Revolution



## Key words

**Autocracy** - government by an absolute ruler

**Dictator** - an absolute ruler

**Ideology** - a system of ideas that an economic or political theory is based on.



## Time

You need ten hours to cover this unit.



## Study skills

Research and collaborative approach.

## 18.1 Background to the Chinese Revolution

As in Russia, the 20<sup>th</sup> century began in China with a Revolution. Perhaps the earliest event of the Revolution in China was the Boxer rebellion of 1900 which was directed against foreigners such as the USA, Japan, Britain and France who had gained concessions in China. The Chinese Revolution and way of fighting, particularly guerrilla warfare, influenced many African liberation movements.

### 18.1.1 The Feudal System

The development of the Chinese Socialist Revolution was a reaction to the long period of feudal domination by the Manchu Dynasty. Under the Manchus, power was in the hands of a few rich landlords who exploited the peasants. The peasants were the majority and they were forced to pay high rates of rent, usury and taxes to the landlords. The landlords and the emperors lived in great luxury and maintained private armies while the peasants lived in grinding poverty. The peasants tried to overthrow the landlords but failed.

## 18.1.2 Imperialism

Simultaneously, China was under heavy colonialist pressure by the USA, Britain, France and Japan. These foreigners were after economic gain and they divided China into spheres of influence. They created systems of privileges for themselves and made huge profits from trade with China. The Chinese accused the foreigners of stealing China's wealth and they called them "foreign devils".



### ACTIVITY 18.1 RESEARCH AND WRITING

1. Name any five imperialists who had concessions in China and briefly describe their business in China.

#### Suggested answers

1. It is correct to identify the USA, Britain, Germany, France, Japan and Russia as the imperialists who had concessions in China. These imperialists exploited the economy of China. They divided China into spheres of influence for imperial occupation. The foreigners created systems which privileged them and they made huge profits from trade with China.

## 18.2 Events of the Chinese Revolution

### 18.2.1 The Boxer Rebellion

In 1900, a secret society known as the Righteous and Harmonious Fists or the Boxers society was formed to drive away the foreigners. The Boxer Rebellion was crushed down and in 1905 a revolutionary Brotherhood society was formed to overthrow the Manchus. The revolutionary Brotherhood was led by Dr Sun Yat-sen and it later developed into the Nationalist or Kuomintang party.



## ACTIVITY 18.2 RESEARCH AND WRITING

1. Who were the Boxers and what were the reasons for their rebellion in China in 1900?

### Suggested answers

We hope you have identified the Boxers as a group of peasants and a few intellectuals, also known as the society of the Righteous Harmonious Fists who rebelled in 1900 in China. Discontent with the foreigners, famine and distress caused the Boxer rebellion. The rebellion was also directed against the autocratic rulers of the Manchu dynasty. The Boxers were secretly encouraged and armed by the empress and they attacked foreign embassies in Peking in 1900. They killed many missionaries and besieged the diplomats and their families for over six months. The Boxer rebellion was crushed by the Western troops from Europe and America.

### 18.2.2 China becomes a Republic

Sun Yat-sen set up three principles for the new China: Nationalism, Democracy and the people's livelihood. He wished to depose the hated emperors, drive out the foreigners and to introduce democratically elected government which would seize all the land from the great landlords and give it to the peasants. The empress's government was so securely propped up by foreign money, foreign weapons, and foreign soldiers that Sun Yat-sen's league made little progress. Sun Yat-sen had no strong army to defeat the warlords and had no money to fulfil his ideas. He resigned as president and Yuan Shih-Kai became the second president of the Republic of China. Yuan wanted personal power. He was not interested in improving the people's lives. He did not believe in the revolution and democracy. What he wanted was dictatorship and had the support of the army. In 1913, Yuan forced the National Assembly to make him life president. In 1915 Yuan became the Emperor of China and he died in 1916. Yuan's rule as president differed little from that of the Man Zhous. Opponents were assassinated; Yat-sen's principles were forgotten, peasants were still exploited and more concessions were sold to the foreigners as long as they paid well. The civil war of 1915 weakened China and Japan took advantage of that weakness. Japan presented the infamous 21 demands to China. The demands aimed to give Japan control over China. The public reacted violently and China fell into Chaos. Warlords

seized as much land as they could and terrorised the peasants. Sun Yat-sen tried to keep the little that still remained of the Chinese Republic in the south but to no avail. The local generals looted, taxed, sold official posts, traded opium, sold out battles and did other forms of corruption which led to the death of many people. Having accumulated great, some warlords retired to foreign ports where they lived in luxury, safe from the people that they had betrayed. In 1917, China joined the First World War on the side of the Allies hoping to halt Japanese imperialism.

### 18.2.3 Formation of the Communist Party in China (CCP)

Following the end of the First World War and the October Revolution (1917) in Russia, labour struggles intensified in China. Workers were fighting for better wages, freedom of association, freedom of speech and better welfare. China suffered humiliation from Japan at the treaty of Versailles when the treaty failed to return the German concessions to China. This led to massive protests in China, known as the May Fourth Movement. The May Fourth movement gave birth to the Chinese Communist Party. In 1921, the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) was formed by a professor at Peking University and one of his library assistant, Mao Zedong. At the same time, another communist group was started in Paris by Chinese students under the leadership of Chou En-lai. The Nationalist Party formed an alliance with the Chinese Communist Party in order to establish a firm control over China and to fight against Japanese imperialism. Under the influence of the Communist Party, the Kuomintang Party (KMT) was reorganised and restructured to ensure popular participation especially of the peasants. A political army was created and a process of educating the peasants was started at the Peasant Institute established by Mao Zedong and other Chinese Socialists. When Sun Yat-sen died in 1925, he was succeeded by Chiang Kai-Shek. The KMT did not have definite goals and under Chiang Kai-Shek, Sun Yat-sen's principles were forgotten and KMT degenerated into a corrupt and inefficient body. Before long, the alliance between the communists and the KMT started to experience problems especially on how the struggle against Japanese imperialism was to be conducted. In 1927 there was an open conflict and the KMT formally broke away from the alliance. The Chinese Communist party had two enemies to fight: the KMT and the Japanese imperialists. Before waging this struggle, the Chinese Communist Party leaders stated to organise the peasants in order to win their support. Many landowners were murdered and their land was shared among the peasants. While the communist party was gaining popularity and consolidating their strong hold in the south, Chiang drove northwards

in his campaign against the warlords. He captured Peking in 1928 and resistance by the warlords came to an end. In 1927 Jiang's troops advanced towards Shanghai where many workers went on strike to support them. By then Jiang no longer wanted help from the Chinese Communist Party. He was afraid that the Chinese Communist Party was becoming too powerful for his leadership. He directed his army to kill the Chinese Communist Party members. Thousands of Chinese Communist Party members were massacred in Shanghai and other cities, the massacres marked the end of the Chinese Communist Party work in the cities. They fled to the mountainous rural areas far away from Jiang.

### 18.2.4 Mao Zedong and the Long March

In 1934, the Communists launched the famous Long March of armed peasantry under the leadership of Mao Zedong to fight against the external aggressors, the Japanese, and the internal oppressors, the KMT. Initially the Communists concentrated on the Japanese and defeated them in 1935. Later on they turned their attention to the KMT. In spite of the massive military support provided by the Americans, the KMT was defeated in October 1949 and thus bringing a new era in China. Moving south-west into the mountains, the Great Procession marched in an enormous arc to skirt the enemy forces. They kept strict discipline and lived mainly on food confiscated from the landlords of the regions through which they passed. It was the behaviour of the Red Army on the Long March that won them many converts. Mao laid down rules for all Communist troops to observe. The three main rules were: to obey orders in all actions, to turn in everything captured and not to take a single needle or piece of thread from the masses. The Red Army's eight-point code of conduct was strictly enforced. The points were: to speak politely, pay fairly for what is bought, return everything borrowed, pay for anything damaged, not to hit or swear at people, not to take liberties with women and not to ill-treat prisoners. Mao used these principles to get the support of the people. Usually the guerrillas were fewer than their enemies and they had poor weapons compared to their enemies. In order to survive, the guerrillas had to avoid face to face battles. Mao ordered them to fight when they were going to win, run away when they were not going to win, retreat when the enemy advanced, harass the enemy when they were camped and attack when the enemy got tired. According to the Communists, the key to victory was the justness of the cause for which one was fighting and those who fought for the liberation of their people were fighting a just war. During the Long March, many sympathised with

the Communists. The Red Army travelled through very difficult terrain. They crossed many rivers and many mountain ranges. They ran short of food and these difficulties strengthened them. They won many supporters on the way and when they reached Yanan, they established schools, clinics and cooperative farms.

### 18.2.5 The second Chinese-Japanese war

In 1936, Mao appealed to all Chinese war-lords, KMT and CCP alike to join forces and drive out the invading Japanese. In reply Chiang sent his northern army on an all-out offensive against the Communists in Shensi. Unfortunately the man that he sent, General Chang Shek-liang, had more hatred for the Japanese than he had for the Communists. Chang came to an agreement with the Communists and Chiang became suspicious. He flew to the spot to investigate and was seized by the soldiers of both forces. He was presented with an ultimatum to either join the communists and fight the Japanese or face execution. Chiang chose to join the communists to present a united front to the Japanese. Chang, however, returned to Nanking with Chiang and there he was put in gaol. The combined forces of the Chinese were no match for the well-equipped Japanese. By 1939, the Japanese had taken in the whole of the eastern half of China. Nanking and Burma fell to the Japanese cutting off free China from the outside world. When the Second World War broke out in 1939, the struggle in China died down as Japan prepared for war against the USA. After the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour, the Communists and the Nationalists set back and hoped that the Americans would finish off the Japanese without the expenditure of any more Chinese men and money. The arms which the USA poured into China for use against the Japanese were rarely used. Both sides stockpiled them for the renewal of the Civil War which was inevitable.

### 18.2.6 The Communist victory (1949)

After the atom bomb had been dropped in 1945, the Russians declared war on Japan and began to invade Manchuria near where the bulk of Mao's Red Army troops were stationed. Chiang's government had become very corrupt and greedy and the disciplined Communist Party was able to gain support. The Soviet Union supported the Communists and the USA supported the KMT. In 1948 Chiang became determined to confront the Red Army, now known as the People's Liberation Army (PLA), in Manchuria. He launched one decisive battle which resulted in the victory for the Communists. In 1949 Peking surrendered without a fight, and all effective Nationalist

resistance came to an end. Chiang, about 600 000 Nationalist troops and about 2 000 sympathiser refugees retreated to the island of Taiwan, under American protection. On 1 October 1949, Mao Zedong proclaimed the founding of the People's Republic of China. He became the Republic's president and Chou En-lai became its first prime minister. The Republic received recognition from many countries throughout the world. In December 1949, Chiang proclaimed Taipei the temporary capital of the republic, and continued to assert his government as the sole legitimate authority of all China. The last direct fighting between the Nationalists and the Communists ended with Communist capture of Hainan Island in May 1950; though shelling and guerrilla raids continued for a number of years. In June 1950, the outbreak of the Korean War led the American government to place the US seventh fleet in the Taiwan Strait to prevent either side from attacking the other. Conflict ended after the People's Republic of China took the Mosquito Tail Islet in the Wanshan Archipelago.



### ACTIVITY 18.3 Research

You may have realised that as in the liberation struggle in Zimbabwe, the Chinese Revolution was based on the peasant class.

1a) State five ways in which the Chinese peasants helped the Communists during their Long March.

#### Suggested answer

- Peasants worked as porters
- Some worked as informer
- Some peasants joined the Red Army as soldiers
- Peasants gave shelter to the long marchers
- They also provided food and clothing
- Some cleared roads for the Communist marchers

#### 18.2.7 China in 1949

Many years of fighting left China in a state of chaos. Communications were shattered, inflation was high and industry and agriculture were down. China had to deal with agriculture and communication to save the people from hunger. The peasants used

their traditional and primitive tools and transport to rebuild roads, dykes and canals and to harvest crops. The benefits were limited because the plots were small and the people used hand tools that were inefficient. There was not much food surplus left to sell to the urban people. By 1950 there were improvements in road rail and canal links. Irrigation and drainage systems were improved. Peasants were happy to be given land, but some problems still remained: many peasants lacked knowledge, draught power (oxen to pull ploughs) and equipment to do farming productively. There were also problems of lack of education, absence of health care and manufactured goods.

### 18.2.8 China and the Soviet style Socialism

The CCP were different from the Bolshevik Party in the Soviet Union in 1917. Bolsheviks were mostly workers in large industries in the cities whereas most of the CCP members were peasants in rural areas. The CCP looked to the Soviet Union so much so that they copied their style of organising the economy. The Chinese nationalised most of the major industries especially those owned by the foreigners. They adopted the Soviet Union Five-Year Plans. China's first Five-Year Plan lasted between 1953 and 1957. Its main goal was to build heavy industries like the production of steel, coal, electricity and machinery. It was similar to what the Soviets had done under Stalin in the 1920s. The Chinese were happy about the success of the plan but they also believed that there could be an alternative to the Soviet model for development. Building heavy industries did not benefit the majority in the rural areas. The Chinese later abandoned the Soviet model and targeted the countryside for development.

### 18.2.9 The Chinese Agricultural Policy

Many Chinese people were in serious debt. They had to sell their children to pay the landlords. Those who failed to pay were killed or beaten by the landlord's armies. The CCP opposed this oppression and the people supported them. The CCP kept its promise of giving land to the people. Land was obtained in many ways. In some cases the landlords were killed and their land was taken. In most cases the landlords ran away and yet some landlords agreed to give up their land.

### 18.2.10 Collectivisation

The Chinese government began collectivisation of agriculture in the 1950s. The programme aimed to transform the rural areas by decreasing the gap between the

rich and the poor and by improving the standard of living of all people through allowing equal access to the means of production. The change from private plots to collective organisation was rapid. Force was used on the people to make them accept collectivisation. The CCP government organised the farmers step by step. The first step was to establish mutual aid teams where small households shared the use of ploughs and other tools. Members of the teams worked on each other's land to improve irrigation and build roads. Then the people were moved into cooperatives where all land and production tasks were shared. Cooperatives had about 1 000 households. In cooperatives, people kept their family possessions and maintained private gardens and fowl runs. By 1956 nearly all Chinese peasants had joined cooperatives. After one or two years in cooperatives, collectivisation moved to the final stage, the formation of the people's communes. People's communes included several thousand households. The people's communes were not only for agriculture but for local government. The people's communes made decisions for their development. People in the rural areas had the responsibilities to develop their communities. They organised education, provided health care and developed local industry. People's communes aimed at total self-sufficiency of the people. It meant each people's commune would produce all they needed.

### 18.2.11 The Hundred Flowers Policy

When the first Five-Year plan was coming to a successful conclusion in 1957, Mao proclaimed his "Hundred Flowers Policy". The name was derived from a Chinese classic which says, "Let a hundred flowers blossom, and let a hundred schools of thought contend." Under this policy the people were invited to say exactly what they thought of the new regime. A lot of criticism was said and this shocked Mao and the CCP. The CCP realised that freedom of speech was dangerous and the right was withdrawn.

### 18.2.12 The Great Leap Forward

From 1958 some Communist Party enthusiasts took drastic measures to speed up the process of communism. Under the Great Leap Forward scheme, rapid industrialisation and agricultural reforms entailing the introduction of communes were taken. The government encouraged all people from peasants to professors to produce steel in backyard furnaces, even in rural areas. The scheme was affected by poor harvests and floods. However, by 1958 about 99% of the peasants were in the communes and

some 40 000 people would work on a project such as building bridges, roads and irrigation systems. Many Chinese people improved their lives.

### 18.2.13 The Cultural Revolution

This was a campaign against corruption, waste and elitism it was launched in 1966. The revolution was launched by the gang of four which included Mao Zedong's wife. It saw the speedy introduction of socialist values and the ruthless suppression of anti-socialist tendencies. These initiatives were achieved through force and created fear, apathy and general discontent among the people. The CCP leadership quickly realised the mistakes and took corrective measures. The Chinese government did not officially announce the end of the Cultural Revolution until the death of Mao Zedong in 1976. Mao was succeeded by Deng Xiaoping who dismantled the communist system. He allowed foreign business to operate in China and also allowed private property.

### 18.3 Results of the Chinese Revolution

Positively, the Chinese Revolution ended monarchy and accelerated industrialisation. It established the Republic of China under Mao Zedong. It also spread the new communist ideology over a wide area. Negatively, the revolution replaced monarch with conservatives. It also led to provincial decentralisation. China lost some territory when provinces such as Mongolia declared themselves independent. Ended foreign domination and paved way for China's rise as a Great Power.

### 18.4 THE CUBAN REVOLUTION (1953-1959)

#### NOTE IT

Revolutions have occurred throughout history and continue to arise even in the present day. Many revolutions happen because of misconception between the government and its people. In the end, the outcomes of Revolutions are usually good but, sometimes it might not be what people want.

### 18.5 Reasons for the Cuban Revolution

The reasons for the Cuban revolution can broadly be divided into internal factors and external factors. Now let us look at these factors in detail.

### 18.5.1 The corrupt way in which the country was run

Cuba was granted independence after the US-Spanish war of 1898. Thereafter, a succession of greedy and inefficient dictators came to power. After some years of chaos, the army stepped in, in a coup led by an army sergeant, Fulgencio Batista.

### 18.5.2 The large role the USA played in the running of Cuba

The USA backed dictator, Fulgencio Batista who suppressed the people in Cuba. Batista was a corrupt person and the Cuban Revolution was launched in order to overthrow him. Batista ran the country through his puppets from 1933 to 1940. He made himself popular with the masses by forcing the government to grant higher wages, holidays with pay and social services. He was elected president in his own right. Four years later he was voted out. He seized power again in 1952 and ruled as a dictator. Batista was opposed by a wealthy left-wing lawyer, Fidel Castro and his brother Raoul. Fidel and Raoul were forced to flee to Mexico where they joined a band of plotters under the Argentinian revolutionary, Ernesto (Che) Guevara, and planned to overthrow Batista.

### 18.5.3 The poor treatment and conditions the lower class Cubans lived with

While Batista and his puppets were worth millions of dollars, the average Cuban lived in apt poverty. Over half of the population, lived in huts, shacks and slums without the slightest sanitary facilities. Illiteracy was high and millions of Cubans were unemployed.

## 18.6 Events of the Cuban Revolution

### 18.6.1 Guerrilla warfare

In 1956, the exiled Cubans thought the time had come to take over power. A small band of them crossed to Cuba in a sailing boat but their plan had been betrayed and they ran straight into an ambush. In the battle that followed, seventy of the raiders were killed, but the Castro brothers and ten others escaped to the wild mountains of the Sierra Madre. Here they recruited the peasants to help in the struggle against Batista. The recruits were armed with weapons smuggled abroad. The guerrilla army made widespread attacks on the government troops. In 1958 Castro made a full-scale advance and in January 1959, Batista fled, leaving Castro master of Cuba.

## 18.6.2 Castro's policies

From 1959 to 2007 Fidel Castro ruled in a crisis-haunted Cuba, leading the nation through social reforms, US attacks and barricades, holding on to a clear idealistic policy. In the opening days of his reign, he had to consolidate his power. Castro began the reforms he had promised. Many of Batista's former officials were tried and executed. The press and radio were censored. Violent propaganda attacks were made on the USA. Foreign businesses were seized without compensation. Russian submarines began to appear near the island, and Cuba began to look more and more towards the Communists for aid and advice. Many refugees from the middle classes began to flee to Florida. Among the peasants, Castro's reforms made him a popular hero.

## 18.6.3 The Bay of Pigs Crisis

In 1961 the refugees, trained by US officers and equipped with US weapons, invaded Cuba. When the raiders landed on the Bay of Pigs, the whole island stood firmly behind Castro and the invasion was a fiasco. The Bay of Pigs crisis resulted in a sharp increase in support for communism in Cuba. Castro was rejected by the USA and some capitalist Latin American countries and had to rely more and more on the Soviet Union. This led to the Cuban missile crisis in which Russia stockpiled nuclear weapons in Cuba. The crisis ended when Russia backed down in the face of American threats. Relations between the USSR and Cuba became strained.

## 18.7 Results of the Cuban Revolution

The Cuban Revolution brought some significant progress to the country. Castro's government seemed more honest than many in a continent full of corrupt leaders. The standard of health, education and social welfare rose. The status of women also improved. However, overdependence on the US markets and the embargo by the USA on Cuba hurt the economy of the country. Cuba also suffered chronic shortages of basic goods and infrastructure lagged behind. Furthermore the country remained poor and tied to sugar production. Cuba has neither collapsed as the USA hoped, nor has she been a successful outpost of communism in the American continent as the USSR wished.

## SUMMARY

You may have realised that the Cuban Revolution was an armed revolt led by Fidel Castro's 26<sup>th</sup> of July Movement. It was against the government of Cuban dictator Fulgencio Batista. The revolt took place between 1953 and 1959. Batista was finally removed from office on January 1, 1959. He was replaced by a revolutionary government led by Castro. This government later changed along communist lines and became the Communist Party of Cuba in October 1965. China had been ruled by the Manchu emperors since the mid-1600s. In the 1900s little parts of China were being taken over by outside countries. The young people of China at the time were very upset with this and the emperor for not stopping it. This unrest led to the development of the People's Nationalist Party led by Sun Yat-sen. In 1911 the People's Nationalist Party forced the emperor out and created a republican government. The People's Nationalist Party was unable to unite China or force out the various countries that were claiming land there. When Sun Yat-sen died, Chiang Kai-shek took his place and built up the nationalist army. With his army he reclaimed Chinese land from other countries. The Nationalist Party split forming a Communist party, who believed that the peasants should have a say in the government. Chiang Kai-shek disagreed with this and sided with the wealthy farmers. He then forced the Communists into a small area in southern China. The exiled communists started an exodus to Yen-an in northwest China. This 6000 mile trek is known as the Long March, and only 8 000 of the 10 000 communists survived. During the Long March the Nationalists attacked the Communists. The Communists found a leader, Mao Zedong. Mao and the Communists claimed the Northwest lowering taxes and giving the peasants more power. As more and more Chinese heard of Mao's changes, they joined the Communists. Eventually a communist army put together by Mao drove Chiang Kai-shek and the Nationalists out of China and into Taiwan. Mao now started to make changes all over China. Economically he set up Five-Year Plans that focused on making farming communes and growing industry. He also appointed fellow communist believers to important government positions. Around 1966 Mao decided that not enough people were supporting his government, so he decided that the country needed a Cultural Revolution. He got college students and young people involved in destroying the past. They destroyed art and books from the days of the emperors. They tore down architecture that was representative of the past. Mao also put together the Red Guard which questioned people about their allegiance to the communists and even jailed or executed individuals who they thought were not good

communists. In 1968, Mao put a stop to the Cultural Revolution feeling it had gone too far. Mao died in 1976 and he was succeeded by Deng Xiaoping who dismantled the communist system.

## READING LIST

Mlambo AS *Focus Study Aids 'O' Level Revision* (1999) College Press

Moyana H and Sibanda M *The African Heritage Book 4* (2003) Zimbabwe Publishing House

## ASSIGNMENT

Research and write a report in your journal why the socialist revolution in China was led by the peasants and not the workers as Marx said it would be.

## ASSESSMENT

Four essay questions to be answered in two hours

## ASSESSMENT TEST 1

- 1a) Identify any five provinces occupied by foreign countries in China before 1936. (5)
- b) Describe the administration of Jiang Jieshi's (Chiang Kai-shek) government from 1930 to 1935. (12)
- c) To what extent did the weaknesses of Jiang Jieshi's government lead to its downfall? (8)

## SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

- 1a) State any five factors which made Mao Zedong gain support from the people of China up to 1949. (5)
- b) Outline the problems that Mao Zedong faced in China from 1949 to 1976.(12)
- c) To what extent was Mao successful in dealing with these problems? (8)

- 2a) State any five problems faced by the Communists in China before 1949. (5)
- b) Describe the Chinese Civil War from 1946 to 1949. (12)
- c) How important was the role played by the peasants in the victory of the Communists? (8)
- 3a) Name any five foreign countries which were interested in China before the Chinese Revolution. (5)
- b) How did the Chinese people deal with the Japanese invasion of their country between 1931 and 1945? (12)
- c) How important was external help to the Chinese in driving out the Japanese? (8)
- 4a) Identify any five of Mao's points of attention for the Red Army. (5)
- b) Outline the Communists' Long March. (12)
- c) To what extent did Mao's ability to lead contribute to the success of the Long March? (8)
- 5a) State any five causes of the Cuban Revolution. (5)
- b) Describe the nature of Fulgencio Batista's regime. (12)
- c) To what extent did the people of Cuba benefit from the Cuban Revolution? (8)

## SUGGESTED ANSWERS TO ASSESSMENT TEST 1

1a) Provinces occupied by foreigners in China

- Manchuria
- Shanghai
- Yenan
- Shensi
- Nanking
- Peking

b) You may have realised that under the administration of Chiang Kai-shek

- Warlords were wiped out or had accepted Chiang's rule
- Communists had been driven to the northern regions
- Western business came back to the Southern ports
- New factories were built by foreigners and Chinese
- New roads, airlines and railways were introduced
- Intellectuals opposed Chiang of the dictatorial rule and inefficiency
- Business people suffered from raging inflation
- Peasants were ill-treated

c) To a greater extent

- Privileges to Western firms angered the Chinese
- Sun Yat-sen's principles were ignored
- Peasant were ignored
- Peasants died of starvation

However,

- Mao was an able leader
- Intellectuals admired the honesty and patriotism of Mao's government.

## SUGGETED ANSWERS TO SAMPLE EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

1a) Factors which made Mao gain support

Military genius

Great diplomat

Mao's teachings were popular

Won peasant support through land redistribution

Mao was a charismatic, competent and inspiring leader

b) Problems faced by Mao included

Ongoing civil war in the country

Need for land reform

Lack of experience in matters of state by the Communist Party

Poor economy

Social problems – diseases, illiteracy, corruption

Destruction of infrastructure

Food shortages

Poverty

Opposition

c) To a greater extent

Employment was created

The masses were given land

Wealth was distributed equally

Mass manufacture of cheap goods

Industrial output increased

However,

Drought affected crop yield

Poor management caused industry to suffer

Withdrawal of Russian technicians affected industry

2a) Problems faced by the Communists

Attacks by the Nationalists

Drought

Poverty

Unemployment

Shortage of land

Poor education

b) The Chinese Civil War

The Nationalists controlled most of the cities in northern China and Manchuria

The Communists controlled mostly the countryside

Chiang launched a three-pronged attack on the Red Army

The Communists retreated to Yanan

The Communists set up a base in the mountains

The Communists used guerrilla tactics and Mao trained a peasant army

The Communists were aided by Russia and the Nationalists were aided by America

The Communists were supported by many in China

The Communists emerged victorious

c) Importance of the role played by the peasants

To a greater extent

The Red Army was made up of peasants

Peasants fed hid and helped Mao's forces

The peasants led the revolution

However

Support from businessmen and intellectuals

Military tactics of the Red Army

Mao's land policies

Mao's land policies were attractive

3a) Countries that were interested in China included:

Britain

France

Russia

Germany

Japan

USA

b) Dealing with Japanese invasion

United front of all Chinese formed to fight Japan

Chiang forced by his general to comply- not willing at first

Nationalists continued to harass the Communists rather than fighting the Japanese

Nationalists turned to the weak League of Nations

Nanking fell and Chiang fled

The Red Army continued to fight the Japanese

Victory for the Communists made the Nationalists jealous of them

USA urged the Nationalists to fight Japan after the attack on Pearl Harbour

Japan was defeated after atomic bombs were dropped at Hiroshima and Nagasaki

c) Importance of external help

To a greater extent

USSR supported the Communists and USA supported the Nationalists fighting Japan

Russia moved into Manchuria and captured it

USA cut off trade links with Japan

USA dropped atomic bombs on Japan

However,

The Red army put up spirited effort against the Japanese

The Chinese had a united front to fight the Japanese

4a) Mao's points of attention

Speak politely

Pay fair for what you buy

Pay for anything you damage

Do not damage crops

Do not ill-treat prisoners

Freedom fighters are like fish and the masses are the waters

b) The Long March

Chiang attacked the Communists in 1934

Mao and his followers were entrapped

Mao and his followers started the Long March on 16 November 1934

The aim of the Long March was to reach the backward and semi-desert province of Shensi

It was a 10 000 km march

Many sympathised with the Communists

Many people died on the way

The marchers faced many problems - they crossed many rivers and many mountain ranges, they were attacked by the Nationalists, they passed through snow, rain and hail - they ran short of food

The march led the communists to victory

c) Mao's contribution to victory

To a greater extent

Mao was a competent and inspiring leader

A military genius

A great diplomat

His teachings were popular

He disciplined the Red Army

He was a great motivator who joked with the people

However,

Support from the peasants

The Red Army was competent

Chiang and the Nationalists blundered

5a) Five causes of the Cuban Revolution

The dictatorship of Fulgencio Batista

Corruption in the country

Poor living conditions

Ill-treatment

Influence of the USA

b) The nature of Fulgencio Batista

He was a greedy and inefficient dictator

Lived in great luxury while the majority suffered

Was opposed to Communism and wanted to have it crushed

Seized power

Was determined to silence the Communists

c) Benefit of revolution to the people

Universal literacy achieved

Cuba's public services improved

Universal health care and high life expectancy

Status of women improved

However,

Overdependence on US markets

Less economic freedom

One-party dictatorship

Limited freedom of speech

Shortage of basic goods

Unstable prices making economic planning difficult

# UNIT 19: REGIONAL COOPERATION

## 19.1 The Frontline States

## 19.2 Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC)

## 19.3 Southern African Development Community (SADC)

## 19.4 Organisation of African Unity (OAU)

## 19.5 African Unity (AU)

### Introduction

If you recall what you learnt in unit 1 on Pan-Africanism we talked about the formation of the OAU as a result of the spread of Pan-Africanism ideas in Africa and this is going to be dealt with in this unit. If you still recall in unit 2 and 3 we also discussed about the role of the Frontline States in supporting the rise of Mass Nationalism and the liberation struggle in Southern Rhodesia (Zimbabwe) by training its freedom fighters. This will again be discussed in detail in this unit. This unit traces the history of the Frontline States, SADCC, SADC, OAU and the AU. You are going to learn about the origins, formations, aims, organs, achievements, failures and weaknesses of these regional cooperation organisations. You will learn about the transformation of SADCC to SADC and OAU to AU. Enjoy your study.



### Objectives

After reading through this unit you should be able to:

- List the Frontline States
- List members of the SADC
- Outline the aims of the frontline states, SADC and the OAU and AU
- Describe the role played by the frontline states in the liberation of Zimbabwe
- Describe the role played by SADC in the socio-economic development of the region
- Describe the functions of the organs of the OAU and AU
- Explain the successes and failures of SADC
- Assess the successes and failures of OAU and AU



## Key words

**Independence** - the quality or state of being free or liberal from oppression

**Independent** - free from oppression due to colonisation

**Liberation**- being set free from oppression or colonisation

**Liberated** - to be set free from control or prison

**Region** - is a fairly large area without exact boundaries

**Socio-economic development** - progress which benefit people or a nation affecting the way of life and economy

**Unity** - the state of oneness or being united

**United** - being joined or bonded by peace, love and harmony into one

**Sanction** - an official order, such as the stopping of trade that is taken against a country in order to make it obey international law

**Coalition** - a union of political parties or groups for specially agreed purposes



## Time

You are advised to spend 10 hours on this unit.



## Study Skills

You are advised to read thoroughly every aspect on this unit, attempt all activities given, refer to suggested answers upon challenges and research further on the topic using good research skills .Make use of the collaborative approach also.

## 19.1 The Frontline states (FLS)

### 19.1.1 The Frontline States' background

In this section you have to think deeply about what a state is. In this unit it refers to a country. Let's now focus on our topic. Frontline States were a coalition which

comprised of African countries from the 1970's up to 1990's. The Frontline States were formed to coordinate their response to apartheid. These were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and from 1980 Zimbabwe. In 1975 the Frontline States were seen as an entity and a committee of the Assembly of the Heads of State of the Organization of African Unity (OAU). By that time they consisted of Botswana, Tanzania and Zambia. Mozambique and Angola joined the Frontline States in 1975 when they became independent from colonial rule. Zimbabwe also joined the Frontline States in 1980 when she attained independence from settler regime governance. Who was the leader of the Frontline States? The Frontline States were under the leadership or chairmanship of Julius Nyerere of Tanzania until his retirement as president of the state in 1985. The Zambian president Kenneth Kaunda was appointed as the next chair of the Frontline States. Tanzanian and Zambian leadership often met to coordinate their policies.

### 19.1.2 Aims of the Frontline States

Like any other alliance, note that the Frontline States joined hands to achieve the following reasons:

- To coordinate the member states' responses to apartheid in South Africa
- To formulate uniform policy towards apartheid government in South Africa
- To end the white minority rule in South Africa and Rhodesia now then Zimbabwe
- To fight against white minority rule in Southern Africa
- To promote unity and security of member states
- To fight external threats in Southern Africa
- The founding members Tanzania and Zambia were afraid of South Africa's military and economic capability
- The Frontline states 'founding members Botswana, Tanzania and Zambia leaders Sir Seretse Khama, Julius Nyerere and Kenneth Kaunda were afraid of Ian Smith's Rhodesia which was a close ally of South Africa before 1980 when Zimbabwe became independent
- The founding members of Botswana, Mozambique and Zambia were afraid of former Portuguese colonies' economic capabilities and their trade with South Africa.

- To end South Africa, Mozambique, Angola and former Ian Smith's Rhodesia's regional cooperation to fight against the interests of the majority ruled countries
- To fight against external threats in Southern Africa

**REMEMBER;** various countries joined the FLS for different reasons. Below is a list of reasons why the countries joined the FLS

- Tanzania was afraid of South Africa's military and economic power
- Mozambique was afraid of Rhodesia's economies and armies
- Angola was afraid of South Africa and external threats from UNITA, a rebellious group there
- Botswana wanted to expand its economy and be safe from South Africa
- Zambia wanted to have friendly relations with Angola , Mozambique , Zimbabwe and South Africa as she is a land locked country
- Namibia was afraid of South Africa
- South Africa joined the FLS in 1994 after attaining independence to have good relations with Botswana, Namibia, Zimbabwe and Mozambique which she share boarders with
- South Africa wanted to be united with other Southern African countries which supported her independence from foreign rule



## Activity 19.1

- List 5 members of the Frontline States (5)
- Outline the aims of Frontline States (12)

## Reflection

How did you find this activity? We hope you enjoyed it. Here are some of the suggested answers to activity.

## Suggested answers

1a) Members of the Frontline States are:

- Zambia
- Tanzania
- Botswana
- Zimbabwe
- Angola
- Mozambique
- Namibia
- South Africa

1b) The Frontline states wanted to:

- coordinate the member states' responses to apartheid in South Africa
- to formulate uniform policy towards apartheid government in South Africa
- to end the white minority rule in South Africa and Rhodesia now then Zimbabwe
- to fight against white minority rule in Southern Africa and to fight external threats in Southern Africa
- to promote unity and security of member states
- The founding members Tanzania and Zambia were afraid of South Africa's military and economic capability
- To end South Africa, Mozambique, Angola and former Ian Smith's Rhodesia's regional cooperation to fight against the interests of the majority ruled countries.

### 19.1.3 The role of Frontline States in the liberation of Zimbabwe

From the definition of key words, you learnt about the term liberation, the Frontline States played a significant role in liberating Zimbabwe from Britain since it was one of their aimed targets. Who were the founding members of the Frontline States? What were their aims towards Zimbabwe's liberation? The founding members of the Frontline States Botswana, Zambia and Tanzania aimed at liberating Zimbabwe from the government of Ian Smith. Zambia and Tanzania's determination was seen in the Mulungushi club which was informal consultative forum to discuss about Southern Africa. In this forum they were later joined by the president of Botswana, Khama and the president of Mozambique Samora Machel who led the front that liberated Mozambique (Frelimo). Angola joined in 1976 after attaining independence. These nations were now geared towards freeing Zimbabwe. They provided moral support

to the Zimbabwean liberation. They assisted the ZANLA and ZIPRA forces during the armed struggle especially Mozambique, Tanzania and Zambia. Evidence of the importance of Mozambique in particular can be seen in the mass killing at Chimoio and Nyadzonya by the Rhodesian forces during the liberation struggle of Zimbabwe, where Zimbabwean freedom fighters and refugees camped. Zimbabweans were also camped at the Freedom Camp in Zambia where the Rhodesian forces bombed the ZANLA forces. Zambia also played its role in training the Zimbabwean forces to fight against the settler regime government. The independence of Angola also made the Frontline States focus on Zimbabwe's liberation. Tanzania also played an important role in assisting Zimbabwe's liberation struggle by providing a camping site at Mgagao. The nature of white racism that was in Zimbabwe in 1970's and the persistence of the white settler regime's rule in South Africa made the Frontline States to support the armed struggle in full force. The nations played an important role in discarding the internal settlement of 1979, naming Muzorewa as Puppet of the British. The Frontline states continued to give moral and material support to the Patriotic Front, ZIPRA and ZANLA forces. The Frontline states also achieved overwhelming support by forming the OAU in Monrovia in July 1979 rejecting the internal settlement of Muzorewa government. Frontline states made sure that the commonwealth Heads of States should not recognise the Salisbury government that is (Muzorewa's government).



**Fig 19.1: Adapted from: Step Ahead History Student's Book Form 3. By Mavuru S and Nyanhanda - Ratsauka K.**

### 19.1.4 Transformation of Frontline States to Interstate politics

Please note that upon attainment of independence by South Africa in 1994 the Frontline states no longer had any threat to fight against, more so South Africa joined them. Further apartheid had come to an end. The frontline states decided to rename to Interstate Politics Defence and Security Corporation [ISDSC] that was approved by SADC in 2001.

### 19.1.5 Analysis of Frontline States/Challenges of the Frontline States

From what we have covered so far on Frontline States what can you say on their achievements in liberating Zimbabwe? As you attempt to respond to this question also focus on the challenges they faced. Frontline states were afraid of South Africa's superiority economically and military. They could not impose sanctions on South Africa due to its economic muscle. Majority of its citizens were working in South Africa. They were afraid of South Africa's defence force and raids and frontline states discouraged the ANC to use their feretories as bases to launch attacks against South Africa. How did South Africa affect the Frontline States? Did that affect Zimbabwe's liberation struggle? South Africa's attacks on the Frontline States especially, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique (RENAMO) and Angola (UNITA) supporting rebels. South Africa undermined the national liberation struggle in Zimbabwe. South Africa's super exploiting of African labour. The Frontline States were not strong enough to bulldoze South Africa. South Africa military operations destabilised the Frontline States.

### 19.1.6 The role played by ZANLA and ZIPRA Forces in liberating Zimbabwe

They were determined to liberate their country. They went to the Lancaster House Conference (1979) determined to hold talks to make Zimbabwe an independent state. The election date was set for 14 February 1980. The zeal by Zimbabwe's youths to leave school and train as soldiers to fight the settler regime government in Zimbabwe. Masses sheltered and fed the freedom fighters playing their role in liberation, also as the *mujibas* and *chimbwidos*. The spirit mediums' role was advisory to Freedom fighters on tactics and directions to follow on the battle front and also moral support. ZANLA and ZIPRA forces trained guerrillas at various training camps, sabotaged economic infrastructure of Rhodesia through bombing of oil tanks in Salisbury.



## Activity 19.2

- 1a) Name 5 countries that share border with South Africa (5)
- b) Describe the role of Frontline States in the liberation of Zimbabwe (12)

### Reflection

How was activity 19.2? Was it challenging? We hope you found it very interesting. Here are some of the suggested answers to activity 19.2.

### Suggested answers

1a) Countries that share borders with South Africa are:

- Zimbabwe
- Mozambique
- Botswana
- Swaziland
- Lesotho
- Namibia

b) We hope you described the following

- The Frontline States played a significant role in liberating Zimbabwe since it as one of their aimed targets
- The founding members of the Frontline States Botswana, Zambia and Tanzania aimed at liberating Zimbabwe from the government of Ian Smith
- They provided moral support to the Zimbabwean liberation struggle
- They assisted the ZANLA and ZIPRA forces during the armed struggle especially Mozambique, Tanzania and Zambia
- The importance of Mozambique in particular can be seen in the mass killing at Chimoio and Nyadzonya by the Rhodesian forces during the liberation struggle of

Zimbabwe, where Zimbabwean freedom fighters and refugees were camped

- Zimbabweans were also camped at the Freedom Camp in Zambia where the Rhodesian forces bombed the ZANLA forces
- Zambia also played its role in training the Zimbabwean forces to fight against the settler regime government
- The independence of Angola also made the Frontline States focus on Zimbabwe's liberation
- Tanzania also played an important role in assisting Zimbabwe's liberation struggle by providing a camping site at Mgagao
- Training of fighters
- Diplomatic support
- They rejected Muzorewa's government

## 19.2 SADCC

Having discussed about the Frontline States, we think you are now aware of the countries which formed it, its aims and functions. With that background let us now focus on SADC. You were taught this topic at primary and form two levels also. What does the acronyms SADCC and SADC? Name the members of SADCC. When did SADCC change its name to SADC? Having tried to answer these questions on your own let us focus on this topic SADCC and then focus on its transition to SADC.

### 19.2.1 The Southern African Development Co-ordination Conference (SADCC) Origins

SADCC was a regional cooperation organisation formed in 1980, April by nine countries in Southern Africa namely Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Namibia joined SADCC in 1990 after gaining independence from South Africa.

### 19.2.2 Aims of SADCC

What were the aims of SADCC? Their main aim was to speed up the economic growth and development of the region. They also wanted to improve the living conditions of the people of Southern Africa. It also aimed to promote justice and peace in Southern

Africa .To reduce the countries of Southern Africa's economic dependence on South Africa. To ensure the region's self - rule and security. Member countries' opposition to the apartheid system in South Africa. It also aimed to support liberation movements in South Africa, as well as to support Namibia's independence from South Africa.

### 19.2.3 How Southern Africa States depended on South Africa

You have to note that most countries in Southern Africa were relying on South Africa from the late 19th century in three forms. The development of mining in South Africa led to the colonisation of some SADCC states such as Malawi, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa's railway system provided the only route of the sea for land-locked countries since the 1880s. These landlocked countries included Zimbabwe, Swaziland, Lesotho, Botswana, Malawi and Mozambique. The South African economy relied on neighbouring countries for labourers. Among these were Zimbabwe, Swaziland, Lesotho, Botswana, Malawi and Mozambique. Lesotho and Swaziland continued to use the South African Rand as their currency even after independence. Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia and Botswana were members of the South Africa Customs Union.

#### REMEMBER:

You have to note that this dependence on South Africa by SADCC members hindered its success.

#### TIPS

Do you still remember the example we gave you in unit 12 on the League of Nations about the functions of your major organs that run your day to day life as a human being? If so very good. We hope you still recall us pointing out that if these organs become inefficient the whole body will stop functioning properly for example the heart, brain and lungs meaning there is need for them to work hand in hand for you to survive. This illustration also apply to SADCC,SADC,OAU and AU's organs and commissions' roles and these will be dealt with in this unit. For all the various organs refer to this illustration. In the following subtopic we are going to discuss about SADCC's organs.

## 19.2.4 SADCC's Organs

### 19.2.5 The SADCC Leadership/Summit

SADCC was led by heads of states and governments. They met usually when need arose to exchange information on their national programmes. They also met to discuss future co-ordination of regional projects.

### 19.2.6 Council of Ministers

These held the heads of states and governments' decisions and each member state provided its own minister.

### 19.2.7 Committee of officials

There was also a committee of officials from member countries. It also worked in liaison with the heads of states.

### 19.2.8 Secretariat

The secretariat was based in Gaborone in Botswana. The secretariat was headed by an Executive Secretary appointed by the heads of states of member states. The Secretariat wrote the agendas, minutes, suggestions and resolutions of the heads of states, council of ministers and council of Officials.

### 19.2.9 Problems of SADCC

Now let's focus on SADCC's problems or challenges. Attempt to list them on your own. We hope you were able to do so. Some of these problems were the following:

- Unequal development of states hindered economic cooperation, for example, Zimbabwe was more developed than other member states and this created problems.
- Some states had strong links with their former colonial rulers.
- Some states such as Swaziland, Lesotho and Botswana had strong links with South Africa which was racist.
- South Africa weakened the SADCC economic co-operation.

- Member states chose to follow different development patterns due to their differences in development patterns so they often had to disagree on their view of economic co-operation.
- Personal conflicts between leaders of member states who normally had different views depending on how they govern their states.



### Activity 19.3

1. What does SADCC stands for? [1]
2. When was SADCC formed? [1]
3. Name the 9 founding members of SADCC. [9]
4. List the aims of SADCC when it was formed. [7]
5. When did Namibia become a member of SADCC? [1]
6. Outline problems faced by SADCC. [12]

### Reflection

How was this activity? We hope you found it very easy and brainstorming since question 1-5 are simple recall ones normally asked on part (a) questions while question 6 is a part (b) one to be written in continuous form. We hope you still remember this on one of our tips on unit 1.

### Suggested answers

1. Southern African Development Coordination Conference
2. April 1980
3. Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe
4. a) To improve the living conditions of the people of Southern Africa  
 b) To promote justice and peace in Southern Africa  
 c) To reduce the countries of Southern Africa's economic dependence on South Africa

- d) To ensure the region's self –rule and security
- e) Member countries' opposition to the apartheid system in South Africa
- f) To support liberation movements in South Africa
- g) To support Namibia's independence from South Africa

5. 1990

- 6. a) Unequal development of states hindered economic cooperation, for example, Zimbabwe was more developed than other member states and this created problems.
- b) Some states had strong links with their former colonial rulers.
- c) Some states such as Swaziland, Lesotho and Botswana had strong links with South Africa which was racist.
- d) South Africa weakened the SADCC economic co-operation.
- e) Member states chose to follow different development patterns due to their differences in development patterns so they often had to disagree on their view of economic co-operation.
- f) Personal conflicts between leaders of member states who normally had different views depending on how they govern their states.

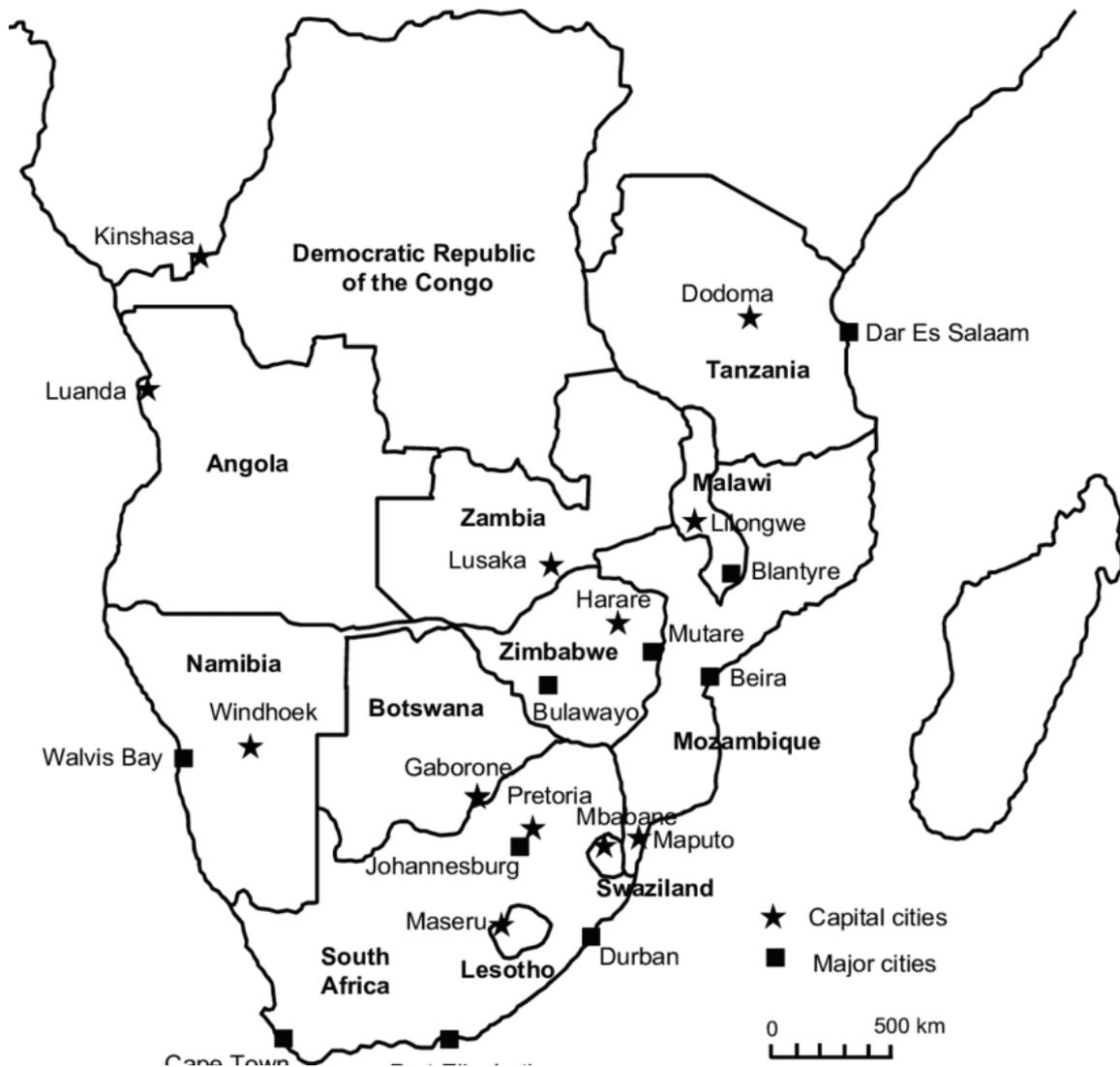
## 19.3 SADC

### 19.3.1 SADC's Background

From your reading on SADCC, we think you now know when and why SADCC was formed. We hope you also noted the challenges SADCC faced just like the Frontline States especially South Africa's role in weakening any regional co-operation. You also noted the roles of SADCC's organs. The member states responsibilities are the same with those in SADC so we will focus on them in this section. There are only additions of member states which joined SADC later on such as South Africa and their responsibilities. Let us now focus on the change of SADCC to SADC.

SADCC – changed its name to SADC – Southern African Development Community on the 17<sup>th</sup> of August 1992 at Windhoek in the Republic of Namibia. The majority

of the heads of member states or governments of majority ruled states of Southern Africa, members of SADC signed the Southern African Development Community on 17 August 1992 at Windhoek in Namibia. SADC wanted to increase regional Integration started by SADCC. SADC was created to increase regional co-operation and address lessons learnt from its challenges and failures. They aimed at a higher level of co-operation to enable the countries of the region to address problems of national development. SADC was found by 10 member states namely Angola, Mozambique, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia, Zimbabwe, Namibia. New members were to be admitted by the summit's unanimous decision.



**Fig 19.2**

**Adapted from: Dynamics of 'O' Level Human and Economic Geography, By Gocha N. T, Ncube R, Moyo S N T and Nembaware L**

### 19.3.2 Aims of SADC

We hope you recall the aims of SADC in the previous sub topics. SADC's aims are the same with those of SADC and there are only additions. Revisit your SADC aims before you start to read these ones. List some of the aims of SADC? We hope you listed the following aims. SADC was meant to improve the living standards and conditions of the people of Southern Africa through the promotion of economic activities in the states various fields of responsibility in the whole Southern Africa region. It also aimed to reduce member of states economic reliance on South Africa. It also aimed to establish links to form genuine and equitable regional Integration for number states. It was also meant to promote peace and justice of member states. It also targeted to ensure the Southern African region's self-rule and security. SADC also wanted to restructure productive sectors and to respond positively to change in the world economy. SADC also had a zeal to unite together to secure international co-operation within the SADC guidelines and framework's strategy for economic liberation.

### 19.3.4 SADC guiding principles

**NOTE IT: You have to know the guiding principles of SADC, which are as follows;**

- a) Sovereignty and equality of all members.
- b) Solidarity, peace and security.
- c) Human rights, democracy and the rule of law
- d) Equity, balance and mutual benefit.
- e) Peaceful settlement of disputes.

### 19.3.5 SADC objectives are meant to;

- a) achieve development and economic growth ,alleviate poverty, enhance the standard and quality of life of the people of Southern Africa and support the socially disadvantaged through regional integrations;
- b) Evolve common political values ,systems and institutions;

- c) Promote and defend peace and security ;
- d) Promote self-sustaining development on the basis of collective self-reliance and the interdependence of member states;
- e) Achieve complementarity between national and regional strategies and programmes;
- f) Promote and maximise productive employment and utilisation of resources of the Region;
- g) Achieve sustainable utilisation of natural resources and effective protection of the environment;
- h) Strengthen and consolidate the long lasting historical, social and cultural affinities and links among the people of the Region.

### 19.3.6 SADC General Undertakings

What do you think are general undertakings? These are guidelines, in our subtopic; they refer to principles to be followed by member states when they signed the SADC treaty. Member states agreed to adopt adequate measures to promote the achievement of the objectives of SADC, and to refrain from taking any measure likely to jeopardise the sustenance of its principals, the achievement of its objectives and the implementation of the provisions of the SADC treaty. SADC and member states agreed not to discriminate against any person on grounds of gender, religion, political views, race, ethnic, origin, and culture or disability. SADC also agreed not to discriminate against any member State. Member States agreed to take all necessary steps to accord the SADC treaty to enforce of national law. Member States also agreed co-operate with and assist institutions of SADC In the performance of their duties.

### 19.3.7 SADC organs/ institutions

The following organs were established:

- a) The Summit of Heads of State or Government;
- b) The Council of Ministers ;
- c) Commissions;

- d) The Standing Committee of Officials
- e) The secretariat; and
- f) The tribunal.

### 19.3.8 The summit

The summit consist of the Heads of State or Government all member states, and the supreme policy-making institution of SADC. The Summit was responsible for the implementation of the functions of SADC. The Summit also adopted legal instruments of the implementation of the provisions of the SADC Treaty; provided that the Summit may delegate this authority to the Council or any other institution of SADC as the Summit may deem appropriate. The Summit was also elected a Chairman and Vice-Chairman of SADC from among its members for an agreed period on the basis of rotation. The Summit also agreed to meet at least once a year. The Summit decides on the creation of Commissions, other institutions, committees and organs as need arise. The summit appointed the Executive Secretary and the Deputy Executive Secretary, on the recommendation of the council.

### 19.3.9 The Council

The council consist of the one Minister from each member state, preferably a Minister responsible for economic planning or finance. It is also the responsibility of the Council to: oversee the functioning and development of SADC; oversee the implementation of the polices of SADC and the proper execution of its programmes; advise the summit on matters of overall policy and efficient ,approve polices, strategies and work programmes of SADC; Direct, coordinate and supervise the operations of the institutions of SADC subordinate to it; define sectoral areas of co-operation and allocate to member states responsibility for coordinating sectoral activities, or re-allocate such responsibilities; create its own committees as necessary. The council also recommend to the Summit persons for an appointment to the posts of Executive Secretary and Deputy Executive Secretary and determine the terms and conditions of service of the staff of the institutions of SADC. The council convene conferences and other meetings as appropriate, for purposes of promoting the objectives, programmes of SADC and perform such other duties as may be assigned to it by the Summit or the SADC Treaty.

### 19.3.10 Commissions

Commissions were constituted to guide and coordinate co-operation and integration policies and integration policies and programmes in designated sectoral areas, based on the duties tasked member states, for example transport and communication. The composition, powers, functions, procedures and other matters related to each Commission were prescribed by an appropriate protocol approved by the Summit. The Commission work closely with Secretariat. Commissions are responsible and report to the council.

### 19.3.11 The Standing Committee of Officials

The Standing Committee consists of one permanent secretary or an official of equivalent rank from each Member State, preferably from a ministry responsible for economic planning or finance. The Standing Committee is a technical advisory committee to the Council. The Standing Committee is responsible and report to the Council. The Chairman and Vice-Chairman of the Standing Committee are appointed from the Member States holding the Chairmanship and the Vice-Chairmanship, respectively, of the Council. The Standing Committee meets at least once a year and decisions of the standing committee are by consensus.

### 19.3.12 The secretariat

The Secretariat is the principle executive institution of SADC and is responsible for:

- a. Strategic planning and management of the programmes of SADC;
- b. Implementation of decisions of the Summit and of the Council;
- c. Organisation and management of SADC meetings;
- d. Financial and general administration;
- e. Representation and promotion of SADC; and
- f. Coordination and harmonisation of the policies and strategies of Member States. The Secretariat is headed by the Executive Secretary. The Secretariat has such other staff as may be determined by the Council from time to time.

### 19.3.13 The Executive Secretary

1. The Executive Secretary is responsible to the Council for the following:
  - a. Consultation and coordinate with the Governments and other institutions of Member States;
  - b. Pursuant to the direction of Council or Summit, or his/her own initiative, undertaking measures aimed at promoting the objectives of SADC and enhancing its performances
  - c. Promotion of co-operation with other organisations for the furtherance of the objectives of SADC;
  - d. Organising and servicing meetings of the summit, the Council, the Standing Committee and any other meetings convened on the direction of the Summit or the Council;
  - e. Custodianship of the property of SADC;
  - f. Appointment of the staff of the Secretariat, in accordance with procedures, and under Terms and Conditions of service determined by the Council;
  - g. Administration and finances of the Secretariat;
  - h. Preparation of Annual Reports on the activities of SADC and its institutions;
  - i. Preparation of the Budget and Audited Accounts of SADC for submission to the Council;
  - j. Diplomatic and other representations of SADC;
  - k. Public relations and promotion of SADC;
  - l. Such other functions as may, from the time, are determined by the Summit and Council.
2. The Executive Secretary liaised closely with Commissions, and other institutions, guide, support and monitor the performances of the SADC in the various sectors to ensure conformity and harmony with agreed policies strategies programmes and projects.
3. The Executive Secretary is appointed for four years, and is eligible for appointment for another period not exceeding four years.

### 19.3.14 The Tribunal

The Tribunal is an assembly including one or more judges to conduct judicial business. The tribunal ensures adherence to and the proper interpretation of the provisions of the SADC treaty and subsidiary instruments are there to adjudicate upon disputes as may be referred to it. The composition, powers, functions, procedures and other related matters governing the Tribunal are prescribed in a protocol adopted by the summit. Members of the Tribunal are appointed for a specific period. The Tribunal give advisory opinions on such matters as the Summit or the Council may it refer to it. The decisions of the Tribunal are final and binding.

### 19.3.15 SADC-Countries and their responsibilities

Now let us focus on the SADC countries and their responsibilities. Do you still remember them from your primary and ZJC work?

<b>Member states</b>	<b>Responsibilities</b>
<b>Angola</b>	<b>Energy conservation and development</b>
<b>Botswana</b>	<b>Agricultural research and animal disease control</b>
<b>Lesotho</b>	<b>Soil and water conservation and land utilisation</b>
<b>Malawi</b>	<b>Fisheries wildlife and forestry</b>
<b>Mozambique</b>	<b>Transport and communications</b>
<b>Namibia</b>	<b>Sea fisheries</b>
<b>Tanzania</b>	<b>Industry and trade</b>
<b>Swaziland</b>	<b>Manpower development and trade</b>
<b>South Africa</b>	<b>Finance and investment</b>
<b>Zambia</b>	<b>Southern Africa Development fund and mining</b>
<b>Zimbabwe</b>	<b>Food security</b>
<b>Mauritius</b>	<b>Tourism</b>

### 19.3.16 SADCC/SADC's successes

You have to note that SADCC just changed its name to SADC but with the same countries which collectively formed a regional market .These countries had diverted resource base and if it had exploited fully they simulated rapid economic growth within the region. Bilateral trade were between member states. SADC are good

prospects for expanding the transport infrastructure linking all their members. SADC is also helpful in intervening in political problems which arise in Southern Africa, for example in the DRC.

### 19.3.17 SADC's Failures

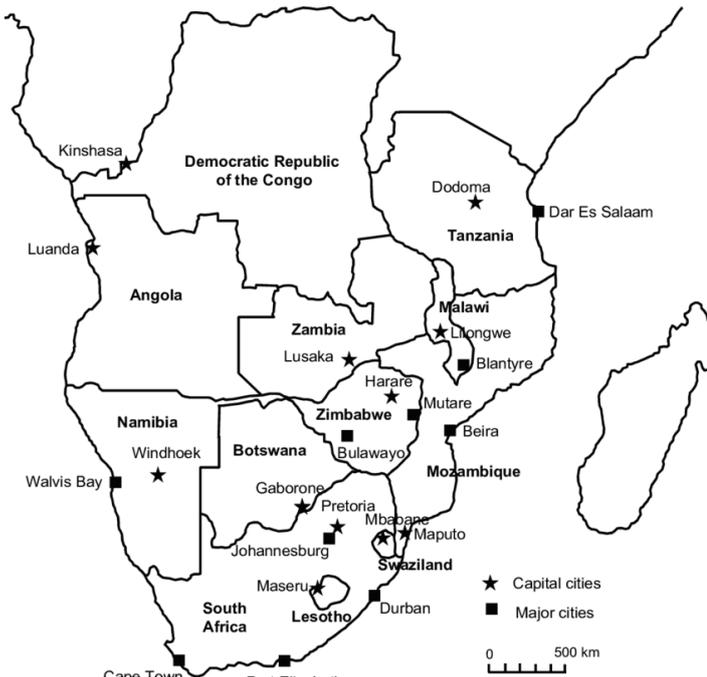
Despite the successes, the SADC also have some weaknesses as shown below:

There are different political ideologies amongst member states since its formation. The economic dependence on South Africa, especially in the transport and mining spheres and their provision of good and services continues. Most SADC countries are poor. Most countries continue to be economically tied to South Africa due to historical reasons, for example Lesotho, Botswana and Swaziland. SADC countries are prone to sabotage by South Africa especially on transport routes. SADC also face a problem of not being a common market like the European Union, hence there's no free market approach in the region. Most countries rely on agriculture mostly. Most countries rely on international aid mostly .Most member states' political instability affect SADC, for example Angola's economy has been heavily affected by the internal civil war. Zimbabwe land reform programme has been negatively published and this has affected her capacity to promote food security .No free of goods among member states which continue imposing tariffs and trade regulations, for example misunderstandings between member states such as Zimbabwe and South Africa and Zimbabwe and Botswana. SADC countries are also affected by natural disasters caused by tropical cyclones and frequent droughts which have negatively affected the countries' economies.



## Activity 19.4

1. Study the map below on SADC and identify its member states?



## Reflection

How did you find activity 19.4? Were you able to identify SADC member states? We hope you were able to list the following countries.

## Suggested answers

We hope you identified the following: South Africa, Lesotho, Swaziland, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Angola, Namibia, Zambia, Mozambique, Malawi, Tanzania and the Democratic Republic of Congo.

## 19.4 The OAU

### 19.4.1 Origins and Formation

We hope you still recall our illustration on the origins of Pan-Africanism about your own background. Link your background to the OAU's origin and formation. OAU was formed on 25 May 1963 in Addis Ababa Ethiopia. The OAU was formed to fight against colonisation, promote unity and solidarity among states. The organization was a result of Pan Africanism which was the desire to bring all black African people

of the world to a common struggle for freedom, equality, self-confidence and self-determination. African people were once taken as slaves and colonised. Africa as a single unit was to unite and that Africans were the same hence they were supposed to be united. However the OAU has faced criticism for having decolonised Africa. OAU changed its name to AU in July 2002 with the same aims of the OAU especially to promote democracy, human rights and development across Africa. AU chairman was Thabo Mbeki former South African president. The OAU was formed by 30 African Heads of State and governments with the chairmanship of Emperor Haile Selassie of Ethiopia. That's why Africa Day is celebrated on the 25<sup>th</sup> of May. Many African statesmen took important roles to form OAU. Among them was Kwame Nkrumah who after Ghana's independence in 1957 he was determined to liberate the whole of Africa. He went on to meet Sekou Toure of Guinea and they ended up forming Ghana- Guinea Union which was later joined by Mali's Modibo Keita. Kwame Nkrumah later called on the first Accra Conference of Independent African States attended by Morocco, Egypt, Libya, Ethiopia, Ghana, Liberia, Tunisia and Sudan. They agreed to form an African Common Market and Heads of independent African States which was to meet after every 2 years. Nkrumah went on to call for the All Africa People's Conference (AAPC) with delegates from all over the African continent where they agreed to form a United States of Africa. Even Holden Roberto of Angola, Patrice Lumumba of Congo and Tom Mboya of Kenya attended it. However, the zeal to unite Africa was affected by political, economic and language differences. This led to the formation of the Casablanca group and Monrovia group.

### 19.4.2 The Casablanca Group

The group was named after Casablanca in Morocco where they met. The members which met in Casablanca were Morocco, Ghana, Mali, Guinea, Libya, Algeria and Egypt. Their main aims were to create the United States of Africa, creating a very strong federation of African States, a common market, creating a joint military command and a socialist development of Africa.

### 19.4.3 The Monrovia Group (1961)

The group met in Monrovia Liberia in May 1961. Member states were Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Congo, Liberia, Madagascar, Mauritania, Niger, Nigeria, Senegal, Sierra Leon, Somalia, Togo, Tunisia and Upper Volta. They went on to adopt a draft charter for an organisation of inter-African and Malagasy states.

They also aimed to adopt gradual to African unity beginning with the coordination of efforts in foreign affairs, health economic development & in education. Remember in May 1961, 20 countries then agreed in Monrovia to resolve differences between the differences of the Casablanca and Monrovia groups. The Ethiopian president Emperor Haile Selassie worked tirelessly in resolving the two groups' differences. A meeting of ministers of foreign affairs from 30 countries then met to Addis Ababa in May 1963 under the conference of Addis Ababa and prepared an agenda for a conference of Africa Heads of the state then held a conference in Addis Ababa from 23 May 1963 under the championship of Emperor Haile Selassie of Ethiopian. They come up with a charter to establish the OAU and it was approved. The 30 heads of state and government the founding fallers of the OAU were;

- Kwane Nkurumah - Ghana
- Modibo Keita- Mali
- Sekou Toure- Algeria
- Ben Bella- Algeria
- Gamal Abdel Nasser – Egypt
- NnamdiAzikiwe-Nigeria
- Emperor Haile Selasie- Ethiopia

#### 19.4.4 The aims of the OAU

Now you have covered the origins and formation of the OAU. Let us now look and try understanding at its aims.

- To promote unity and solidarity of the African states
- To coordinate the efforts to achieve a better life for the African people
- To defend African sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence
- To eradicate all forms of colonialism in Africa
- To promote international cooperation

In a bid to achieve the above aims note that the member states agreed to harmonise and coordinate their general policies in the following field:

- a) Political and economic cooperation
- b) Economic cooperation on transport and communication
- c) Educational and cultural cooperation
- d) Health, sanitation and nutritional cooperation
- e) Scientific and technical cooperation
- f) Cooperation on defence and security

### 19.4.5 OAU guiding principles

The OAU was guided by the following principles:

- i. Sovereignty of all member states
- ii. Non-interference on the internal affairs of states
- iii. Respect for sovereignty and territorial integrity of each state and its right to independence to exist
- iv. Peaceful settlement of disputes by negotiation, mediation, reconciliation and arbitration
- v. Condemnation of political assassination and any other activities likely to upset or destroy political systems of African independent states.

### 19.4.6 Organs of the OAU and their functions

Having discussed about the aims of OAU you have to understand the functions of the main organs of OAU namely:

- The assembly of heads of state and government.
- The council of ministers
- The general secretariat
- OAU coordinating committee for the liberation of Africa
- Commission of mediation , Conciliation and Arbitration
- Autonomous specialised agencies.

### 19.4.7 General Assembly of Heads of States and Governments

- It is the supreme organ policy making body of the OAU.
- The coordinates all activities of the OAU.
- It is made up of the state and government
- It has power to review the stricter, functions of all organs
- It makes decisions and adopts resolutions
- Each member of the state has one vote
- It was meant once per year. Unlike the UN, no member state has 0 power of vote.
- The decisions and resolutions were determined a two-thirds majority.

The assembly also received the structure, functions and of the other organs and commissions. This organ was also by the AU.

### 19.4.8 The Council of Ministers of Foreign Affairs

This comprised the minister of foreign affairs of state members. This organ was accountable to the general Assembly. The council had to approve the budget. It also prepared agenda for the assembly. The council also had to implement the decisions passed with the Assembly. The OAU council met twice a year. Each member of the state had one vote. All resolutions of the council were determined by a simple majority.

### 19.4.9 General Secretariat

The secretariats comprised of the permanent staff of the OAU stationed at its headquarters in Addis Ababa and some in other regional offices.

The secretary general was appointed by the General Assembly to direct the affairs of the secretariat.

Diallo Jelli Boubacar was the first secretary general. The functions of the secretariat were as follows:

- Calling meetings of the General Assembly and the Council of the Ministers of foreign affairs

- Drawing up the agendas for the General Assembly and the Council of Ministers of the foreign Affairs
- Preparing budgets of the OAU
- The secretariat did not receive any instruction from any government or any individual
- It is also carried out the OAU's resolutions and decisions.
- The secretariat also kept the OAU's archives.

#### 19.4.10 Commission Mediation, Consolidation and Arbitration (CMCA)

The state members came into agreement to settle all their disputes peacefully among themselves. There was a separate diplomatic document which governed the CMCA's provisions. The CMCA separate diplomatic document formed an integral part of the OAU's charter. It also comprised of 21 members elected by the assembly of heads of state and the government. The countries chosen provided one member only. Qualified personal were the ones chosen or elected or had to serve for a form of five years. The members after serving for the five years the qualified personal professionals qualified to be re-elected.

#### 19.4.11 The Coordinating Committee for the Liberation of Africa (OAU Liberation Committee)

This committee was the most effective one in assisting African countries' liberation movements since it was set in 1963. Its headquarters were in Tanzania. Its aims were to:

- To channel financial aid for liberation movements.
- To provide weapons and military aid to liberation movements
- To provide travel documents for liberation groups

Was the OAU liberation Committee successful in achieving its aims? Yes it was. The OAU liberation committee was successful in asking for western countries to impose economic sanctions on South Africa during apartheid at an UN meeting. The committee also channelled financial aid to liberation movements. It also provided

weapons and military aid to liberation movements such as ZANU, FRELIMO, ANC, SWAPO and MPLA. It also provided travel documents for different African liberation movements.

**You have to note that despite its success the coordinating committee for the liberation of Africa also faced some challenges.**

Other Countries such as Malawi did not cut diplomatic and trade ties with South Africa during apartheid. Zaire also did not cut trade and diplomatic ties with Israel in support of Palestine. Civil wars outbreaks for example in Angola (1975-2002), Liberia (1989-1997) and Mozambique (1975-1999). Border disputes were another challenge. Ethnic violence for example in Rwanda and Burundi between the Hutu and Tutsi in 1994 and 1995. Coups for example Jerry Rawlings staged one in Ghana, Idi Amin in Uganda and in Nigeria there were many coups which were staged. There were also border disputes for example Sudan and South Sudan, Nigeria and Cameroon and Ethiopia and Eritrea.

## REMEMBER:

Africa also faced the following problems;

Non-Interference principle by other African Countries, Some Countries had only one party, different religion, other countries had introduced multi-party democracy, colonial history and most countries had different types of Governments.

## 19.4.12 AUTONOMOUS SPECIALISED AGENCIES

Now that you have learnt about the organs of the OAU and its committees, it is also important for you to know the OAU's Autonomous Special Agencies which worked under the OAU guidance. These were:

- Pan Africa Telecommunications Union ( PATU)
- Pan African Postal Union (PAPU)
- Supreme council for Sports in Africa
- Union Of African Railway (UAR)
- Union Of African National Television and Radio Organisation (URTNA)
- Organisation of Trade Union Unity ( OATUU)



## Activity 19.5

1a) List 5 members of the OAU (5)

2a) List any 5 organs of the OAU (5)

### Reflection

We hope you realised that the above questions are part (a) questions and you were listed the following suggested answers.

1a) 5 members of the OAU

- Ethiopia
- Ghana
- Nigeria
- Algeria
- Guinea
- Sudan
- Egypt
- Mali
- Zambia
- Mozambique
- Tanzania
- South Africa
- Zimbabwe

2a) 5 organs of the OAU

- The assembly of heads of state and government
- The council of ministers

- The general secretariat
- OAU coordinating committee for the liberation of Africa
- Commission of mediation, Conciliation and Arbitration
- Autonomous specialised agencies

### 19.4.13 Successes of the OAU

The Coordination of Committee for the Liberation of Africa was able to assist Africans' Nationalist movements with weapons, transport, food and military support. The coordinating committee for the liberation of Africa also proved that financial support to liberation movements such as FRELIMO, ZANU, ANC, SWAPO and MPLA. The OAU charter was also successful in fostering, African Unity, political and non-political. The Committee for the Liberation of Africa's headquarters at Dar-es-salaam was a gathering point for all fighters. The OAU was successful in settling number of border disputes between member states for example Ghana and Upper Volta in 1963, Sudan and Ethiopia in 1964 and Somalia and Kenya in 1964. The OAU was also successful in creating a mechanism for conflict prevention, management and resolution in 1993; it was able to deal with conflicts all over Africa Such as those in Angola, Somalia, and DRC among others. The OAU was also partly successful in engineering the end of a civil war in Comoros. They advanced the Comoros government to stop using force against the Anjouan and Moheli two of the four Comoros islands who had declared independence from the Gande Comoros. They were also able to send Mr Pierre Yere and reinstall agreement between the Comoros government and the Comoros islands of Anjoun and Moheli. This was done but lasted for only a few period of time until the organisation of African Unity sent an observer mission of 24 persons to deal with the Comoros situation. Once the mission was achieved in all Islands except Anjouan were refused entry by the sepals is there. OAU continued up to 2000 in trying to find a permanent solution to the Comoros cause. The OAU also acted in promoting and protection of human rights. Efforts were made to solve the Eritrean and Ethiopian territorial dispute between the years 1999 to 2002. OAU was successful in encouraging programmes of economic development through the African Development Bank (ADB) in 1963. The African Development Bank thus was very helpful to African countries since OAU members belonged to and supported it. The African Development Bank thus set up facility to promote shelter for middle and low income groups for ADP member countries. The African Development Bank was also

helpful in providing loans for development in agriculture, imports and public activities. The OAU also promoted Africa culture by staging the first AU Africa cultural festival in Algiers in August 1969 and by holding the first workshop on African folklore, dance and music in Mogadishu in Somalia in October 1970. The OAU was also successful through its commission of fifteen on refugees in 1964 to protect refugees most of which were affected by war, drought and famine. OAU was also successful in setting pre-investment studies, fishery projects and anti-rinderpest campaign for cattle, scientific investigations on plant protection, soils and animal health. OAU was also successful with pilot projects in the field of earth science, geology, geophysics. OAU was also successful in promoting African Education by allowing African graduates to move from one African University to another and it also provided preventive medicine and public health measures were applied all over Africa.

#### 19.4.14 Weaknesses of the OAU

Having discussed the successes of the organisation of Africa Unity, you have to know its weaknesses also. This subtopic will focus on the weaknesses of the OAU as shown below.

The OAU was a toothless bulldog, since it had no standing army to punish aggressors. The OAU's charter was weak by its non-interference in member states' internal affairs. It is also evidenced that the OAU could not follow all states which misbehaved by imposing sanctions since they had no power to impose sanctions or suspend them on aggressors. There was also lack of both material and financial resources. Dictatorial leaders of the OAU such as Idi Amin who became its chairman were another weakness. Most leaders of states were self-appointed through coups so they were not willing to intervene in other members states' affairs criticising or reprimanding them when they went wrong. Ideological differences among OAU member states some followed capitalism while some were radicals the intended state planning of economic affairs basing on other governments in the world's views.

### 19.5 African Union

The OAU was transformed to AU meaning African Union. This change was meant to change the way OAU was viewed as a mere organisation for discussions without action. AU was now meant to view it as an organisation meant for action. The AU

was found in July 2002 with Thabo Mbeki former South Africa president as its first chairperson. The problems with the OAU charter's non-interventionist policy led to its transition to AU.

### 19.5.1 Aims of the AU

- To promote democracy in African countries
- To promote human rights in Africa
- To unite African countries and people of Africa
- To promote political, social and economic integration of the continent
- To defend the independence of its member states
- To encourage international cooperation
- To promote peace, security and stability on the continent
- To promote good government and democratic principles
- To protect human rights
- To promote integration of African economies
- To raise living standards of African people
- To promote good health
- To promote development in Africa as a whole

### 19.5.2 Objectives of the AU

- To achieve greater unity and solidarity between the African countries and the peoples of Africa
- Fight for the sovereignty , territorial integrity and independence of AU member states
- Speed up the political and socio-economic integration of the African continent
- To promote and defend African common positions on issues of interest to the continent and its peoples
- To encourage international cooperation

- To promote peace , security and stability on the continent
- To promote democratic principles and institutions, popular participation and good governance
- To promote and protect human and people’s aims
- To promote sustainable development as well as the integration of African economies
- To promote cooperation in all fields of human activities to raise the living standards of African peoples
- Work with recent international partners in the eradication of preventable disease and the promotion of good health on the continent
- To promote Children’s rights

### 19.5.3 Principles of the AU

Having learnt about the principles of the OAU and the aims and objectives of the AU, it is now apparent for you to know the guiding principles of the AU which included;

- Sovereignty equality and interdependence among member states
- Respect of borders and achievement of independence
- All African peoples to participate in the activities of the union
- Prohibition of the use of force or threat
- Non-interference by any member state in the internal affairs of another
- AU to interfere in a member state in serious circumstances, namely war crimes, genocide and crimes against humanity
- Peaceful co-existence of member states and their right to live in peace and security
- Promotion of gender equality
- Respect for democratic principles, human rights, the rule of law and good governance
- Condemnation and rejection of unconstitutional changes of government

## 19.5.4 Membership

Membership is open to every country that intended to join AU. When it was formed it has 53 members .After notifying the chairman to join AU other member states will be notified by the former (chairman) by sending copies to them. Any government that will have come to power through coup will not be allowed to participate in AU activities members' state, nor willing to be an AU member will notify the chairman of the commission who then notifies other member states.

## 19.5.5 Structure of the AU

You have to note that, like the OAU, AU had organs also .These included the following:

- The assembly
- The executive council
- AU commissions
- Specialised technical committees
- African parliament
- The economic, social and cultural council
- Permanent representative committee

## 19.5.6 The assembly

The assembly comprise of heads of states and government or their representatives. The assembly is the main organ of the AU. The assembly meets once per year in ordinary session. However when need arose after requests by members states and approval by two-thirds majority of member states, the assembly met in extraordinary sessions. A government or head of states is elected after consulting other member states and had to build office of chairmanship of the AU Assembly for a period of one year. The decisions of the assembly are reached by a consensus of two thirds of the total membership. The two- thirds of the total membership of the union form a quorum at any meeting of the assembly.

### 19.5.6 (A) Powers and functions of the assembly

One of the powers and functions of the Assembly is to determine the common policies

of the union and adopt the AU budget. Another role of the Assembly was to appoint and terminate the appointment of the judges of the court of justice. It also set up an organ of the union and gave directives to the Executive council. The assembly also takes into consideration requests for membership of the union by the member states. Another task is also appointing the chairman of the commission and his/her deputy or deputies. The assembly appoints commissioners of the commission and determines their functions and terms of office. It also receives requests from other organs of the AU. The assembly takes into consideration reports and recommendations from other organs as well as to take decisive action on reports from other AU organs.

### 19.5.7 The Executive Council

This executive council is composed of the ministers of foreign affairs of other ministers or any other authorities as allocated by the governments of member states. The executive council meets twice a year at least ordinary sessions and also meet in extra ordinary session following requests of any AU member and upon approval by two thirds of all members. The decision of the council is reached through a consensus. If a consensus failed to reach an agreement two thirds of majority of the member states of the AU. Two thirds of the total membership of the union forms a quorum at any meeting of the executive council.

#### 19.5.7(a) Functions of the Executive Council

The executive council is answerable to the AU Assembly and works on issues forwarded to it. Another task is monitoring the implementation of policies formulated by the AU assembly. The council implements decisions of foreign trade. It works on food, agricultural and forestry resources. The council also coordinates and takes decisions on energy, industry and mineral resources. The executive council also takes action on water resources and irrigation. It takes action on health as well as coordinating and deciding on education and culture. The council takes decisive action on human resources development.

#### REMEMBER -

The Executive Council coordinates and decides on policies above taking into consideration the member states interest.

### 19.5.8 The AU Commissions

This is based in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia and forms the AU secretariat. The commission comprise of a Chainman, a deputy and eight commissioners. The commission is responsible for two day to day running of the AU. The commission represent the union. The commission also prepares strategic plans of the executive council. It also defends the interests of the African union. The commissions also promote, coordinate and harmonise the African union's programmes and policies.

### 19.5.9 The specialised technical committees

These are in operation and these are composed of minsters or senior officials in charge of sectors in their areas of competence. The specialised committees which are responsible to the Executive council are:

The committee on Rural Economy and Agricultural matters as well as the committee on Monetary and Financial Affairs. The committee on trade, customs and immigration matters .The committee on industry, science and technology, energy, natural resources and environment. There is also the committee of transport, communication and tourism. Also a committee is on health, labour and social affairs the committee on Education, culture and human resources.

### REMEMBER:

The functions of the specialised technical committees include:

Preparing projects and programmes of the AU and then submit to the executive council. To make sure that they supervised, made follow-ups and evaluation to implement decisions from the AU's various organs. Also to co-ordinate and harmonise projects and programmes of the African union.

### 19.5.10 Pan African Parliament

Pan African Parliament is body governing the African union. It promotes the principles of human rights. Another task of the Pan African Parliament is to promote the principles of democracy in Africa The parliament also promote peace, stability and stability. The parliament encourages good governance by member states encourage transparency and accountability in member states. It also facilitated cooperation

and development in Africa. The parliament facilitates cooperation among Regional Economic communities and their parliamentary.

### 19.5.11 The Economic, Social and Cultural Council

It performs an advisory function of the African Union and it comprised African social groups, professional groups, and non - governmental organisations.

### 19.5.12 Permanent Representative Committee (PRC)

The Permanent Representative Committee (PRC) is composed of ambassadors to the UN and the PRC report to the executive council. It nominates commissioners. Further it is responsible for choosing and appointing consultants. The PRC also follows on the implementation of summit decisions.

### 19.5.13 Successes of AU

From your study and research can you list some of the successes of the AU? We hope you listed the following that it promotes unity in the African continent. The AU has led to the elections of leaders by democratic means. It also provides more stability to the Africans continent. AU is successful defending sovereignty and territorial integrity of member states. The organisation also guards against human rights violation in Africa. Countries such as Zimbabwe benefit from the AU` s partnership for Africa`s Development (NEPAD) established in 2001 by the AU for Africa to fight against underdevelopment and exclusion in a globalising world. AU is also successful in sending election observers to member states during elections, for example in Zimbabwe`s 2018 harmonised elections. It also intermediate whenever a crisis arises for example, peace-making in Somalia and South Sudan. The AU also intermediated over Ethiopia and Eritrea`s border disputes. AU was able to make a peace deal between the warring groups in Sudan in January 2005 and a comprehensive peace agreement was reached. AU was also successful in negotiating a ceasefire deal in Uganda in August 2006. AU was also successful in Burundi, on May 2003 by deploying a peace making force to Burundi. AU was also successful in supporting a democratic political transition in Togo. AU plays an over site role over SADC and rubberstamping its decisions.

## 19.5.14 Failures of the AU

Was the AU successful in achieving its aims? We hope you realised that it was successful in the above subtopic on its successes. Now let us focus on its failures. The AU has been minimal in the negotiations in many countries, for example in Zimbabwe's political parties, DRC and South Sudan. It is failing to fully solve political issues of member states, for example, civil wars in South Sudan, Uganda and DRC. The African Union is also failing to assist in the economic crises in most countries, for example Zimbabwe, Malawi and Mozambique. The African union is failing to stop imposition of sanctions on African countries by countries in other continents, for example Europe. More so the African Union has failed to stop racism between member states, for example Arab countries in Africa such as Tunisia, Morocco, Egypt and Libya want to associate themselves with countries in the Asian continent where most Arab countries are than with other African States. The AU is failing to take the lead in solving problems of many African countries, it rubberstamp SADC's decisions for example in Zimbabwe and DRC.



### Activity 19.6

1. List any 5 organs of the AU (5)
2. List any 5 aims of the AU (5)

## Reflection

Did you attempt activity 19.6? If so, was it challenging? Hope it was exciting. Take note of some of the suggested answers given below.

### Suggested answers

1. Organs of the AU are
  - The assembly
  - The executive council
  - AU commissions
  - Specialised technical committees

- African parliament
- The economic, social and cultural council
- Permanent representative committee

## 2. Aims of the AU

- To promote democracy in African countries
- To promote human rights in Africa
- To unite African countries and people of Africa
- To promote political, social and economic integration of the continent
- To defend the independence of its member states
- To encourage international cooperation
- To promote peace, security and stability on the continent
- To promote good government and democratic principles
- To protect human rights
- To promote integration of African economies
- To promote child rights in Africa

## Reflection

From the whole unit try to remember the following-how the Frontline States assisted in the liberation of Zimbabwe, how SADC, OAU and AU try to promote Regional Cooperation. Try to reflect on the successes and failures of all these regional corporation organisations.

## Summary

You have noted that the Frontline States played an important role in the liberation of Zimbabwe despite challenges from South Africa. You have also noted that SADCC also faced challenges from South Africa since its formation and when it was transformed to SADC. You have also noted that SADC, OAU and AU tried by all means to promote Regional Cooperation despite challenges they face/faced.

## Reading List

We encourage you to read further on regional cooperation using the sources below.

1. Mavuru, S. and Nyanhanda-Ratsauka, K. (2011). Step Ahead History Student's Book 4. Longman.
2. Sibanda, M. and Moyana, H. (2002). The African Heritage History for Junior Secondary Schools, Zimbabwe Publishing House.
3. Niemann, M. (1993). Diamonds are States' Best Friends: Botswana's Foreign policy in Southern Africa, Africa Today: Vol 40 (1), PDF.
4. Gocha, N.T., Ncube, R., Moyo, S.N.T. and Nembaware, L. (2011). Dynamics of 'O' level Human and Economic Geography, College Press.
5. Declaration of SADC Treaty, PDF.

## Assignments

On your own attempt this question

- 1a) Name any five member states of the AU (5)
- b) Describe the work of the AU (12)
- c) To what extent was the AU successful in solving political problems caused by its member states in Africa? (8)
2. Research about the current work of SADC (25)
3. Research about the work of the AU from its formations up to date (25)

## Tips

Remember how the Frontline States assisted in liberating Zimbabwe. You have to take note of SADC, OAU and AU's roles in the promotion of regional cooperation. Take note of the failures and challenges they faced.

## Assessment test

- 1a) Identify any five presidents of the member states of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) since 1980. (5)

b) Outline the responsibilities given to each member states of SADC when the organisation was formed (12)

c) To what extent has SADC benefited its member states since its formation? (8)

## Sample Examination Questions

The following are examples of typical examination questions. You have to constantly attempt them to check your understanding of the topic.

1a) Name any five leaders who formed the Organisation of African Unity (5)

b) Describe the functions of the Assembly of the Heads of State and Government and the Council of Ministers of the OAU (12)

c) To what extent were these organs successful in achieving their aims? (8)

2a) List any five aims of the Frontline States (5)

b) Describe the challenges faced by the Frontline States since their formation (12)

c) To what extent were the Frontline States able to solve these challenges? (8)

3a) List any 5 objectives of AU (5)

b) Describe the duties of the assembly of the AU and the Pan African Parliament (12)

c) To what extent is the AU successful in achieving its aims? (8)

4a) State 5 organs of SADC (5)

b) Outline SADC member states and their responsibilities (12)

c) To what extent is SADC successful in achieving its aims? (8)

## Tips

We advise you to refer to the suggested answers upon challenges on the assessment test and sample examination questions. We have presented part (b) answers in continuous form as per examination requirement. All part (a) answers are presented in point form as per examination requirement, while for part (c) questions guidelines are given for you to add flesh. Make sure you provide judgement and balance your part (c) showing the large and lesser extent sides.

## Suggested answers for the assessment test

1a) Identify any five presidents of the member states of the Southern African Development Community (SADC) since 1980(5)

- Robert Gabriel Mugabe of Zimbabwe
- Sir Tseretse Khama of Botswana
- Julius Nyerere of Tanzania
- Kenneth Kaunda of Zambia
- Samora Machel of Mozambique

b) Outline the responsibilities given to each member states of SADC when the organisation was formed in 1980 (12)

When SADC was formed, at the Lusaka summit in April 1980, the programme of action drawn up there gave a special responsibility to each member country. Mozambique was tasked on transport and communication. Malawi was tasked on fisheries, wildlife and forestry. Botswana was to deal with agricultural research and animal disease control. Lesotho was tasked on soil and water conservation, land utilization and tourism. Zambia's responsibility was mining and Southern African Development Fund. Angola's responsibility was energy conservation and development. Tanzania was tasked on industrial development while Swaziland was tasked on manpower development. Zimbabwe was tasked to deal with food security.

c) To what extent has SADC benefited its member states since its formation? (8)

To a larger extent SADC has benefited its member states since its formation because

- it act as their resource base and if it had exploited fully they simulated rapid economic growth within the region
- Bilateral trade between member states was promoted since 1980 when it was formed
- SADC is a good prospect for expanding the transport infrastructure linking all its members
- SADC is also helpful in intervening in political problems which arise in Southern Africa, for example in the DRC

However to a lesser extent SADC have some non-benefits to its member states

- by failing to fully assist member states with political problems such as the DRC
- Dominance of South Africa
- Underdevelopment of other member states.

## Suggested answers for the sample examination questions

1a) Name any five leaders who formed the Organisation of African Unity (5)

- Kwane Nkuruma- Ghana
- Moalibo Keita- Mali
- Sekou Toure- Algeria
- Ben Bella- Algeria
- Nasser – Egypt
- Azikiwe – Nigeria
- Emperor Haile Selassie- Ethiopia

b) Describe the functions of the Assembly of the Heads of State and Government and the Council of Ministers of the OAU (12)

The Assembly of Heads of State and Government was the supreme organ policy making body of the OAU. It coordinated all activities of the OAU. It was made up of the state and government. It had powers to review the structure, functions of all organs. It also made decisions and adopted resolutions. Each member of the state has one vote. It met once per year. The decisions and resolutions were determined a two-thirds majority. The assembly also received the structure, functions and of the other organs and commissions. This organ was also adopted by the AU .The Council of Ministers of the OAU comprised of the ministers of foreign affairs of state members. This organ was accountable to the General Assembly. The council had to approve the budget. It also prepared agenda for the assembly. It had to implement the decisions passed by the Assembly. The OAU council met twice a year. Each member of the state had one vote. All resolutions of the council were determined by a simple majority.

c) To what extent were these organs successful in achieving their aims? (8)

To a larger extent these OAU organs were successful in achieving their aims by

- Settling number of border disputes between member states for example Ghana and Upper Volta in 1963, Sudan and Ethiopia in 1964 and Somalia and Kenya in 1964
- Creating a mechanism for conflict prevention, management and resolution in 1993; they were able to deal with conflicts all over Africa such as those in Angola, Somalia, and DRC among others
- These OAU organs were also partly successful in engineering the end of a civil war in Comoros

However, to a lesser extent these OAU organs were less successful in achieving their aims because

- Some member states were not cooperative on imposing sanctions to aggressors
- Refusal by some countries to take orders from the OAU for example the Comoros

2a) List any five aims of the Frontline States (5)

- To coordinate the member states' responses to apartheid in South Africa
- To formulate uniform policy towards apartheid government in South Africa

- To end the white minority rule in South Africa and Rhodesia now then Zimbabwe
- To fight against white minority rule in Southern Africa
- To promote unity and security of member states
- To fight external threats in Southern Africa

2b) Describe the challenges faced by the Frontline States since their formation (12)

The Frontline States faced many challenges since their formation because they were afraid of South Africa's superiority economically and militarily. They failed to impose sanctions on South Africa due to its economic muscle. Most Frontline States' majority of their citizens were working in South Africa. They were afraid of South Africa's defence force and raids. The other threat was South Africa's attacks on the Frontline States especially, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique (RENAMO) and Angola (UNITA) supporting rebels. South Africa also undermined the national liberation struggle in Zimbabwe. The Frontline States were not strong enough to fight South Africa.

2c) To what extent were the Frontline States able to solve these challenges? (8)

To a large extent the Frontline States were less successful in solving these challenges because

- South Africa was a threat to them
- South Africa was also very strong economically and militarily, so they were afraid to attack her
- The Frontline States also failed to assist the ANC against the apartheid regime
- They failed to stop South Africa's attacks on them especially on Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Angola

However to a lesser extent the FLS were successful in these challenges because

- They helped in the liberation of Zimbabwe, Angola and Namibia
- They were also successful in promoting regional cooperation among member states

3a) List 5 aims of the AU (5)

- To achieve greater unity and solidarity between the African countries and the people of Africa
- Fight for the sovereignty , territorial integrity and independence of AU member states
- Speed up the political and socio-economic integration of the African continent
- To promote and defend African common positions on issues of interest to the continent and its peoples
- To encourage international cooperation
- To promote peace , security and stability on the continent

b) Describe the duties of the AU Assembly and the Pan African Parliament (12)

The assembly comprise of heads of states and government or their representatives. The assembly is the main organ of the AU. The assembly meets once per year in ordinary session When need arise, the assembly meet in extraordinary session. The decisions of the assembly are reached by a consensus of two thirds of the total membership. The two- thirds of the total membership of the union form a quorum at any meeting of the assembly. The AU assembly's powers of the assembly are to determine the common policies of the union, to adopt the AU budget, to appoint and terminate the appointment of the judges of the court of justice, to set up an organ of the union, to give directives to the Executive council and to take into considerations requests for membership of the union by the member states. The Pan African Parliament is body governing the African union. The parliament also promote peace, stability and it encourage good governance by member states. It also encourages transparency and accountability in member states. It facilitates cooperation and development in Africa. It also facilitates cooperation among Regional Economic communities and their parliamentary.

c) To what extent was AU successful in achieving its aims? (8)

To a large extent the AU was successful in achieving its aims since

- It promote unity in the African continent

- It defends independence of its member states
- The AU was able to make a peace deal between the warring groups in Sudan in January 2005
- It was successful in negotiating a cease fire deal in August 2006 in Uganda. It also gives valuable advice to SADC
- It also supported a democratic political transition in Togo
- It also successfully deployed a peace keeping force to Burundi in May 2003

However, the AU was less successful in achieving its aims because

- It is failing to fully solve political issues of member states for example civil wars in South Sudan and DRC
- It has been minimal in the negotiations in many countries for example in Zimbabwe's political parties, DRC and South Sudan

4a) List any 5 organs of SADC (5)

- Summit
- Secretariat
- Executive Secretariat
- Council
- Tribunal

b) Outline SADC member states and their responsibilities (12)

<b>i) Member states</b>	<b>Responsibilities</b>
Angola	Energy conservation and development
Botswana	Agricultural research and animal disease control
Lesotho	Soil and water conservation and land utilisation
Malawi	Fisheries wildlife and forestry
Mozambique	Transport and communications
Namibia	Sea fisheries
Tanzania	Industry and trade
Swaziland	Manpower development and trade
South Africa	Finance and investment
Zambia	Southern Africa Development fund and mining
Zimbabwe	Food security
Mauritius	Tourism

ii) To what extent was SADC able to achieve its aims? (8)

To a lesser extent

- SADC countries collectively formed a regional market
- These countries had diverted resource base and if it had exploited fully they simulated rapid economic growth within the region
- Bilateral trade were between member states and SADC are good prospects for expanding the transport infrastructure linking all their members

However, to a larger extent there were also failures since

- There are different political ideologies amongst member states
- The economic dependence on South Africa, especially in the transport and mining spheres and their provision of good and services continues
- Most SADC countries are poor
- Zimbabwe land reform programme has been negatively published

# UNIT 20: INTERNATIONAL COOPERATION

20.1 Commonwealth of Nations

20.2 Non-Aligned Movement

20.3 United Nations

20.4 World Conference Summit

## Introduction

In the previous chapter we looked at the role played by S.A.D.C and O.A.U to the promotion of peace in the world. Organisations like S.A.D.C, O.A.U and E.C.O.W.A.S are what are called regional peace initiating groups in charge of African affairs. This unit introduces you to international organisations which cooperated in achieving peace. As you read the previous chapter hopefully you noted the structures and weaknesses of certain organisations from the aims they had. In this unit we shall look closely at the Commonwealth which also focused on maintaining peace and provision of human rights though largely dealing with the former British colonies. We shall also look at the Non- Aligned Movement which was a block of Afro-Asian countries which saw the need to be independent from dominant powers and the United Nations Organisation which is an international organisation formed after the Second World War to promote peace and preserve human rights. In this unit we shall therefore trace on origins, aims, structure, functions, successes and failures of these groups in promoting peace and achieving human rights goals in the world.



## Objectives

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Describe the origins, formation and aims of the Commonwealth, Non-Aligned Movement and the United Nations
- Outline the structure of the Commonwealth, Non-Aligned Movement and the United Nations
- Assess the effectiveness of the Commonwealth, Non-Aligned Movement and the United Nations
- Examine the role of the United Nations in the promotion and protection of human rights

 **Keywords**

In reading this unit the following are some of the key words you are likely to encounter and you need to understand them.

**Commonwealth** - countries which are former British colonies

**Non-Aligned Movement** - is an Afro-Asian group of countries that showed no desire to belong to the superpowers in dealing with their political, social and economic problems.

**United Nations Organisation** - an international organisation formed after the Second World War to replace the League of Nations aimed at promoting peace and human rights.

**Culture** - is a set of beliefs followed by a certain group of people

**Racial lines** - refer to lines of separation within people of different races.

**Charter** - is a formal document describing the rights, aims, or principles of an organisation or group of people.

**Democratise** - means to introduce a democratic system or democratic principles

**Disaster** - is a sudden accident or natural catastrophe that causes great damage or loss of life.

**Organisation** - is an organised group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business or government department.

**Sovereignty** - is the ability by a state to control its affairs without involvement or coercion of another state

**Neo-Colonialism** - an indirect way of controlling a former colony by a coloniser

**Racial discrimination** - when one is separated from all forms of rights and privileges because of skin colour.

 **Time**

You are expected to spend ten hours reading time in this unit and on answering examination questions



## Study skills

From your reading of unit 19, you have brainstormed on the various international cooperation organisations that aimed at promoting peace in the world. Now one of the major tasks is to research and write notes on the origins, formation and aims of the Commonwealth, Non-Aligned Movement and the United Nations. You should be in a position to draw a diagram showing the structure of the United Nations. With your friend can you also debate on promotion of human rights by these international groups? Assess which group you consider to have been most effective.

## 20.1 The Commonwealth of Nations

### 20.1.1 Origins

From your reading of definition of key words, you must understand what the term commonwealth means. In 1884, Lord Salisbury referred the British territories colonies as Commonwealth of Nations. By the time Second World War broke out, there was debate about granting British colonies self government especially India. She got her independence in 1947 and in 1948 entered into voluntary association with her former coloniser Britain. When other Asian countries gained independence, they followed India's lead and followed links with Britain. In Africa Ghana attained independence in 1957 and became the first African country to join the organisation. In the 1960s the commonwealth was now a large organisation of former British colonies. The commonwealth is largely regarded as a loose association of Britain and its former colonies. Origins of the commonwealth were founded by Britain, Australia, Canada, New Zealand, South Africa and Ireland. Between 1900 and 1939, there was debate within Britain over the possibility of granting political equality to the British dominions. Countries like Australia, Canada, New Zealand and South Africa won full equality with Britain during this period. These countries remained linked to Britain and continued to enjoy common citizenship and free immigration within the commonwealth. After the Second World War commonwealth rapidly grew into India joining in 1948. Ghana became the first country from Africa to join the commonwealth in 1957 after her independence. Most African countries joined in the 1960s and by the end of 1990s, African and Asian countries dominated the commonwealth. The commonwealth secretariat was established in London in 1965.

## 20.1.2 Aims

### Note it that:

Like any other organisation, the Commonwealth aimed at the following within its member states:

It wanted to promote the principle of national freedom. It also aimed at promoting peaceful coexistence among its members. The commonwealth also aimed at generating cooperation among member states and enhance consultation in terms of crises among its members. It also discussed problems of concern among member states with the idea of promoting economic and social links within member states. The organisation worked on promotion of human rights and fundamental freedoms of people within the commonwealth. It also aimed at narrowing the gap between the rich and poor countries. It aimed at fighting against international terrorism. The commonwealth focused on ending racial discrimination amongst member states and the entire world. The other aim is to keep family life intact through increasing sporting cooperation through commonwealth games.



### ACTIVITY 20.1

There is need to consider that the commonwealth had a mixed group especially from Asia and Africa. With your friend can you list some of the Asian, African and European countries in the commonwealth? List at least five countries from each of the continents in the Commonwealth.

## 20.1.3 Commonwealth countries in Asia

The following are members of the commonwealth from Asia: Bangladesh, India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Malaysia, Singapore and Brunei.

## 20.1.4 Commonwealth countries in Africa

The following are also members of the commonwealth in Africa: Zambia, South Africa, Lesotho, Swaziland, Botswana, Mozambique, Tanzania, Malawi and Namibia.

### Study tip

What do you think is the difference between aim and principle? What is an aim and what is a principle? Do your reading of the aims and that of principles make any difference to your understanding of each of the two terms?

### 20.1.5 Principles of Commonwealth

The commonwealth believed that peace and order are key aspects to security and prosperity of mankind. Another principle aim was that they believed in the liberty of individuals and equal rights for all citizens. They also laid another principle aim that racial prejudice threatens the health development of human race. The organisation opposed all forms of colonial domination and racial oppression. The other principle aim was that the commonwealth aimed at eradicating the gap between the rich and the poor and that international cooperation is essential to peace.

### 20.1.6 Structure

Hopefully you still remember other functions of the secretariat from the previous units. There is need for you to compare the duties performed by the secretariat of the United Nations, Commonwealth and N.A.M. The secretariat played an important role in the commonwealth just like the one played under United Nations.

The secretariat disbursed funds for various commonwealth projects in different member states. It also organised meetings of ministers and heads of Government as they met to discuss various social, economic and political concerns in their states. The commonwealth provided important information for various meetings. The commonwealth also organised and supported the growing number of activities as well as services in the fields of development, assistance and corporation. The secretariat through human resources development group ran various educational and training schemes and matters such as management, health, women and youth development. Its technical services division administered the commonwealth funds for technical assistance or corporation. Its economic affairs division focuses on developing trade links and export markets, food production and rural development. The secretariat prepared agendas for the commonwealth heads of Government meetings.



### Activity 20.2

Now that you have read about the secretariat, can you quickly brainstorm on duties of the Secretariat?

### 20.1.7 Works of the commonwealth

This can be grouped into social, economic and political. The commonwealth

politically engaged dialogue between warring member states by facilitating appropriate ways of finding solution to national and international problems. It also advocates for promotion of good governance through support for democracy and human rights e.g. the Harare declaration. There has been influence of British legal and parliamentary system at different levels of governments in most states. Defence issues, commonwealth summits are held and ambassadorial links are established to promote the Commonwealth culture and ties.

Socially, the commonwealth seeks to share its heritage through consultation and cooperation since it is a special community. It also provided aid to poor countries especially in Africa and Asia. It promotes on issues of women empowerment and liberation allowing women to develop through commonwealth plan of action on women and development. It also works on promoting the environment and sustainability of countries in their capacity to develop. Most of the present leaders and administrators as well as many doctors, lawyers and teachers have been educated in Britain and Britain run universities. There has been promotion of English as the common language or official language. Most of the countries have absorbed much of British history and culture. Commonwealth games are played every 4 years.

Economically it seeks to promote developmental issues among member states. It provides expert in training through its principle instrument the commonwealth fund for technical cooperation CFTC. It also works on promotion of trade, investment and economic advice especially for developing countries on issues like debt and relief. It has provided strong communication and financial links to those countries in need. Trade links have developed; technical assistance and educational assistance have also formed the basis of commonwealth economic language.

### 20.1.8 Functions of the commonwealth

Like the United Nations organisation, the Commonwealth also had many functions. Originally it is an association of Britain and her dominions (the Whiteman's club) drawn up by the 1931 statute of Westminster. It also changed with the admission of the new Asian and African states into a multi racial organisation. It is a loose association based on voluntary cooperation in which member states are equal partners. It provides grants and advisers for projects in the poorer countries for the commonwealth e.g. Canadian engineers, Austrian teachers to analysis. It also provides financial, technical and educational aid for the emerging African nations. It also provides help to poverty stricken countries. The Commonwealth also builds infrastructure e.g. universities and in

some countries like Zambia has developed hydro-electrical schemes .Another function was to encourage sporting activities and scientific research. It provides scholarships to the under privileged and also encourage cultural exchange programmes. It holds (CHOGM/Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting) where member states exchange political and economic ideas.

The Commonwealth also observes elections making sure democracy and human rights are exercised through voting. The commonwealth provides commonwealth book prizes. There is integration of environmental policies which provides peace keeping monitoring forces. The commonwealth disburses funds for various commonwealth projects. The commonwealth is headed by a secretary general who organises meetings of Ministers and Heads of Government. It also provides necessary information for these meetings. The commonwealth organises and supports the growing number of services in the fields of development assistance and corporation. The Human Resource Development group runs various education and training schemes on matters such as Management, Health, Women and Development and Youth. Its Technical Assistance division administers the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Assistance Or Corporation. Its Economic Affairs division focuses on developing trade links and export markets, food production and rural development. It does all the paper work for the organisation and it prepares the agenda for the CHOGM.

### 20.1.9 Successes of the Commonwealth

The Commonwealth expelled South Africa a long founding member of the commonwealth because of apartheid policy. Through the Gleneagles Declaration of 1977 member states were discouraged from having sporting links with South Africa. Leaders of the Commonwealth unlike those of the league met regularly to exchange ideas at commonwealth forum meetings. The Commonwealth games have promoted international cooperation as various states are brought together to practice cultural diversity. They have been successful in sending observer teams to elections like in Zimbabwe 1980 and 2002 as well as Namibia 1989 to ensure free and fair elections. It has also provided technical support to member countries experiencing shortage of staff with technical or managerial skills. It has also assisted in educational developments in Malawi, Ghana and Nigeria .International crimes have been combated by the commonwealth through sharing of information. It has also embarked on environmental protection programmes which have seen preservation of natural resources. The Commonwealth assisted in bringing the liberation war to an end through the Lancaster conference as former coloniser. Commonwealth assisted

funds and educational scholarships assisted many in educational development. Nigeria through the Commonwealth received help to develop its hydro electric skills. Most Africans through the Commonwealth could now speak fluent English. Sporting skills have been developed in most African countries.

### 20.1.10 Failures

Most African and Asian countries have not benefited from the Commonwealth with members like India and Pakistan having had disputed on boundaries that was not resolved by the commonwealth. Issues of democracy and human rights have not been dealt with satisfactorily. The Zimbabwean issue has divided the Commonwealth. Withdrawal of founding members like South Africa became a stumbling block to any progress of the Commonwealth since her policy of apartheid had offended many countries. Ghana and Tanzania broke diplomatic ties with Britain when she refused to impose sanctions against Rhodesia. The Commonwealth was unable to prevent or solve serious problems such as civil wars. The rest of Commonwealth members were alarmed with the British entry into European Union as her trading relations with the Commonwealth gradually faded as she traded with Europe than African countries. There was trade imbalance which negatively affected African states. African culture was slowly being taken over by English culture in terms of dress, language, religion among others. Few women occupy important positions in Government or industries in member states. The powerful European block of the Commonwealth make decisions which prejudice other members. It failed to transfer technology to poor member states like Zambia. Human rights abuses were still a challenge in some member states. Britain tends to benefit more than any other European or African state. Zimbabwe withdrew from the Commonwealth in 2003.

### Reflection Question!!!

Now that we have looked at the successes and failures of the Commonwealth hopefully you are now in a position to assess which member states benefited from the Commonwealth especially those members from southern Africa. Can you also trace how the Commonwealth has been successful in dealing with problems affecting its members?

### Sub Unit Reflection

Hopefully you have understood the origins, formation and aims of the Commonwealth in this unit. Have you also noted that these peace promoting organisations so far

studied are always having an influential member who needs to benefit and once they benefit there is usually withdrawal or collapse of that organisation. The case in the Commonwealth was more in successes than failures because of African and Asian states which are less aggressive.



### Activity 20.3

Having read about the Commonwealth of Nations, can you quickly brainstorm and finish on the following question. Remember the question is two sided and part of the answer done for you.

#### **c) To what extent did the people of Southern African countries benefit from the Commonwealth of Nations?**

It made links between African countries and European Union easier

It provided platforms at which issues on politics, defence, economy, were discussed and improved

It gave platforms for cross cultural exchange e.g. Commonwealth games

It provided grants and scholarships

Provision of social infrastructure

However, to a lesser extent, there were no benefits to Southern African states from the common wealth as Britain tends to benefit more from the Commonwealth. Commonwealth is also divided along racial lines.

The 'Big brother' mentality by Britain

## 20.2 Non Aligned Movement

### 20.2.1 Origins

Hopefully in the last sub unit on the Commonwealth of Nations you have managed to assess the aims and activities and understand the origins of the organisation. This sub unit will take you yet to another group called the Non Aligned Movement or N.A.M which emerged from the wave of decolonisation which followed World War 2. At the 1955 Bandung conference (the Asian African conference), most of the attendees were of those from which their countries had gained independence and they called

for abstention from the use of arrangements of collective defensive to serve the particular interest of any of the big powers . The group was started in Belgrade in 1961 and was created by Yugoslavia's president Josip Broz Tito, India's first Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru, Egypt's second president Gamal Abdel Nasser, Ghana's first president Kwame Nkrumah. The Non Aligned Movement (NAM) is a forum of 120 developing states. The term Non Aligned appeared in the 5<sup>th</sup> conference in 1976. The countries of the non aligned movement represent nearly two thirds members of those in the United Nations. Membership is particularly in countries considered to be developing or part of third world.

## 20.2.2 Aims

### Note it that:

Like any other peace keeping organisation, N.A.M had its aims and the main aim of the organization was to ensure national independence, sovereignty territorial integrity and security. It insured struggle against imperialism, colonialism and all forms of foreign aggression or domination by great powers. It called for mutual respect for each other's territory, integrity and sovereignty. The N.A.M also aimed at mutual non aggression. It also called for mutual non interference in domestic affairs. The Non Aligned Movement also aimed at equality and mutual benefit.

## Study Tip

What differences have you noted on the aims of the Commonwealth of Nations and the NAM? What base have you seen formulating these two groups?

## 20.2.3 Structure

### Chair person

The Non Aligned Movement is led by a chair person that rotates every three years during summit conferences .Since the XVII NAM Summit of Island of Margarita, held in September 2016 and the Movement has been chaired by H.E .Mr Nicholas Maduro Moros, President of the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela. He is assisted and/or advised by the former and upcoming Chair of the Movement; that is, Iran and Azerbaijan, respectively. This Troika represent the past present and the future of the movement.

## Coordinating Bureau

It composed of 120 member states of the movement and is based at the head quarters of the United Nations; it met monthly at ambassador level. It has chapters in which it carries its activities with a view to advance, promote and define its positions and interests. The chapter deals with coordination of positions within the framework of human rights council which include the world health organisation, the international labour organisation and matters relating to disarmament. It also deals with coordination of positions within the framework of the international atomic energy agency and with matters relating to disarmament. The chapter also deals with the implementation of N.A.M political declaration and programme of action on human rights and cultural diversity. The chapter also deals with coordination of position within the framework on prohibition of chemical weapons. Chairmanship rotates between countries and changes at every summit of heads of states or government to the country organising the summit .

## Working groups

The Non Aligned Movement has a working group on revitalisation of the general assembly. It also has a group on the restructuring of the Security Council .NAM has also a working group on disarmament. The Non Aligned Movement has a working group on peace keeping operations .It also has a working group on human rights and the last group on legal affairs. It also has a ministerial committee which mainly comprised of former chairs of the Non Aligned Movement. It also has peace building commission.

## 20.2.4 Activities of N.A.M

### Criticism of US policy

The organisation has criticised certain aspects of USA foreign policy like the invasion of Iraq and war of terrorism mend to ground Iran and North Korea s nuclear plans. It also criticised the policy of dominance or depriving other countries of their legitimate right to nuclear activities U.S.A wanted to dominate nuclear production suppressing other smaller sates and NAM voiced on the position of oppression by the USA.

### **Self determination of Puerto Rico**

The organisation has supported Puerto Rico on sovereignty of a nation in which the United States had acquired the island after the Spanish American war.USA wanted

its territorial dominance which was not favoured by NAM and this move promoted sovereignty of minor states.

### **Self determination of Western Sahara**

The Non Aligned Movement supported the conflict between Morocco and Polisario Front. The conflict originated from insurgency or rebellion by Polisario Front against Spanish colonial forces from 1973 to 1975. The Western Sahara war against Morocco between 1975 and 1991 has resulted in unarmed civil campaigns. NAM was determined to support Morocco to fight the group.

### **Sustainable developments**

The movement is publicly committed to sustainable development and attainment of millennium development goals but the NAM believes that the international community has not created conditions conducive to developments through infringing sovereignty.

### **Reforms of the UN**

The movement has outspoken in its criticism of current UN structures and power dynamics stating that the organisation has been utilised by powerful states in ways that violate movement of principles.

### **Cultural diversity and human rights**

The movement accepts universality of human rights and social justice. The organisation appeals for protection of cultural diversity and the tolerance of religious, social, cultural and historical preservation.

### **Reflection question**

The NAM had a vision of challenging the USA in her foreign policy like the one on self determination, do you think they were going to be successful and being less dominant states fighting a great state. What do you think of their strength to attack USA?

## 20.2.5 Weaknesses

Like any other group, Non Aligned Members has been criticised for siding with super powers to gain control over certain groups of people in their countries. They are blamed for being opportunistic; they also have no futuristic goals and seldom attend meetings to settle their own matters. Member states are always in feud that is having conflicts with other members e.g. India and Pakistan. It has failed to protect goals of the Non Aligned Movement as Pakistan and India have several cases against human rights. Another weakness is that members focus on relevant forums like SAARC.



### Activity 20.3

List any five leaders and their respective countries instrumental in the formation of the Non Aligned Movement .....

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

### Sub unit reflection

The sub unit on NAM has focused on the origins of the organisation, aims, structure, strengths and weaknesses of the organisation. It is important to note that the Afro-Asian group also aimed at promoting disarmament and promotion of human rights as the Commonwealth and the United nations. The group also failed to address African-Asian conflicts which was its main goal. It is also important to consider the Afro-Asian initiative of a peace building group independent from Britain and the USA.

## 20.3 The United Nations Organisation (UNO 1945)

### 20.3.1 Formation

The U.N.O. origins started with the horrors of the Second World War when statesmen realized that another war would start and destroy mankind. In 1914 president F.D Roosevelt met Churchill in the middle of the Atlantic to discuss the post war Europe. They realized of the need to form the United Nations Organization which would replace the League of Nations whose weaknesses had made great contributions to the outbreak of World War II. They draw up a document known as the Atlantic charter where they agreed all countries would have democratic governments and trade freely with an international security system to maintain peace. In 1942 there

were 26 countries which formed an axis and made a declaration calling them the United Nations. They agreed to support the idea of the Atlantic Charter whereby they agreed to support the idea of Atlantic charter and would continue cooperation after the war. In 1943, the big three namely Britain, America and Russia held further meetings in Moscow and Tehran. The general idea of the UNO was formulated at the Dumbarton Oaks conference (USA) by Britain, USA, Russia and China on Oct 1944. The 1st draft of the UN charter was later signed by 51 nations on April 1945 at San Francisco conference (USA). Thereafter UNO was officially declared on Oct 1945 at its headquarters in New York. The UN was created with six organs to implement its aims and objectives i.e. the General Assembly, the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council, the Trusteeship Council, the International Court of Justice and the Secretariat. It was adopted on 26<sup>th</sup> June 1945 by representatives of 50 nations.

### 20.3.1 Study Tip A

Did you know that there were several conferences held in the formation of the United Nations from 1941 to 1945 and these included: Atlantic meeting 1941, Washington meeting 1942, Moscow meeting 1943, Tehran meeting 1943, Dumbarton meeting 1944, Yalta conference 1945 and San Francisco conference 1945?

### 20. 3.2 Aims

#### Note it that:

The United Nations just like the League of Nations had its aims. You still remember from unit 19 what we mean by an aim of an organisation. The United Nations aimed to create a system of collective security in which all nations of the world would act together to prevent aggression from whatever quarter. It also aimed at eliminating poverty, underdevelopment and abuse of human rights in the world. It also aimed at achieving international cooperation in solving international problems of an economic, social, cultural or humanitarian character. It focused on encouraging respect for human rights and for fundamental freedoms for all without distinction to race, sex, language or religion. The organisation also aimed at promoting peace and security in the world. Resolving disputes peacefully and eliminating war as much as possible in the world was also the primary aim of the organisation. The United Nations also promote and safeguarded human rights and encourage social, economic and educational and cultural progress through the world especially in under developing countries. It aimed at developing friendly relations among member countries and safeguard rights of nations. The U.N.O. also aimed at improving health of all people

in the world. Another primary concern of the U.N.O. was to create and maintain law, order and peace. The outbreak of the Second World War in 1939 was a perfect proof that the League of Nations was incompetent in maintaining world peace. There was therefore need for a stronger international organisation that would bring the world together and maintain peace. This gave rise to the U.N.O. The organisation aimed on the need to stop aggression. This was because Kaiser William II and Hitler's aggression were primarily responsible for the outbreak of the First and Second World wars respectively. These wars were the worst experiences that mankind had ever faced. The U.N.O. was therefore formed to protect weaker nations who are vulnerable to aggression from powerful states in order to avoid yet another destructive war.

The desire to bring to justice those who committed crimes against humanity was also responsible for the formation of U.N.O. by 1945. These included the Nazi and fascists who conducted mass killings of the Jews, communists and other innocent civilians during the Second World War. These were serious crimes that could not be handled by the domestic laws of the different states. The U.N.O. was therefore formed to carry out a series of trials through military tribunals like the Nuremburg tribunal and to punish those found guilty. The U.N.O. also aimed at enforcing disarmament and stopping arms race that was responsible for the outbreak of the two world wars. Besides previous weapons like poisonous gas, long range artilleries, missiles and war planes, there was also atomic bomb that was made and used by US on Japan. These weapons of Mass destruction were a great threat to the survival of human race. The Security Council was to create awareness of the danger of weapons of mass destruction and enforce measures to stop the manufacture, proliferation and use of such weapons. The U.N.O. aimed at facilitating decolonisation and democratisation of those nationalities that were dominated and oppressed. Colonialism and dictatorship had outlived their usefulness and there was a desire for independence and democracy especially in Africa, Asia and Latin America.

The U.N.O. through the trusteeship council was to ensure a peaceful transformation from colonialism and dictatorship to independence and democracy. This was because nationalism had been a source of tension that was partly responsible for the outbreak of the two World Wars. The U.N.O. was also formed to check on threats to the environment which was potentially dangerous to mankind. Weapons of mass destruction especially atomic bombs used in World War 11 had destroyed the world habitat flora and fauna. In addition testing of dangerous weapons like chemical weapons on deserts and water was causing a serious environmental hazard

to mankind. All these explain why efforts were made to establish the United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP). It was to control pollution, desertification and improve on the rural and urban settlements amongst others.

The U.N.O. was also concerned with the need to eliminate the problem of human and drug trafficking. By 1945, the war atmosphere had made human trafficking and consumption of intoxicating drugs to flourish. The sales and consumption of opium and marijuana were on a scaring level to peace and security. These drugs were causing social unrests, making people to run crazy, idle and disorderly in the society. There was therefore need for an international organisation to handle such global threats to mankind hence the formation of U.N.O. The U.N.O. was also founded to rehabilitate and resettle prisoners of war and displaced persons who were made homeless by the Second World War. Besides, oppressive, tyrannical and despotic governments had forced several people to flee to neighbouring states for fear of persecution. The prisoners of war, Internally Displaced Persons and refugees were faced with the challenges of psychological problems and a cute need for humanitarian assistance or lack of basic necessities.



### 20.3.2 Activity A

With your friend can you quickly answer the following assignment?

List any 3 countries in the formation of the United Nations and their statesmen organisation.

Briefly describe the aims of the United Nations organisation.

### 20.3.3 The Structure of the United Nations

Formation of any organization would require a structure that would ensure smooth transition of information and debates. At our churches, schools, and communities there are various structures that we know like the child protection, youth secretary among others. The United Nations had its own structure and the following were languages of communication. French, English, Chinese, Russian, Spanish, Arabic, Swahili. The mentioned languages were used in the following structures of the league that is the general assembly, Security Council, trusteeship council, economic and social council, secretariat and the international court of justice.

### **a. The General Assembly**

The General Assembly is composed of representatives from all members of the UN, who have one vote each. It meets once a year in September but special sessions can be called in times of crisis by the members themselves or by the Security Council. The General Assembly has powers to discuss, review, supervise and criticise the activities of other organs of the U.N.O. The General assembly also has powers to admit, suspend or expel any member. Decisions on issues of major importance require a two third majority but minor issues could be resolved by a simple majority.

### **b. The Security Council**

The Security Council meets more often than the General Assembly. It was created with 11 members of the UN out of which five are permanent members i.e. Britain, USA, Russia, France and China. In 1965 its membership was increased to 15 with the same 5 permanent members. Each member of the Security Council has one vote and every permanent member of the council has the right to approve the decision of the General Assembly. Resolutions require 9 of the 15 members that must include the 5 permanent members. The primary duty of the Security Council is to maintain World peace and Security. It has to submit annual or special reports to the General Assembly.

### **c. The Economic and Social Council**

The economic and social council comprises of 27 members who are elected for three years by the General Assembly. Its main function is to make or initiate studies and reports with respect to international economic, social, cultural, educational, health and other socio-economic problems. The Council executes responsibilities assigned to it by the General Assembly and those requested by member states. It also supervises and co-ordinates other commissions and specialised agencies like World health organisation, International Labour Organisation, FAO, UNICEF, UNESCO, IMF UNHCR etc. (about 30 in all).

### **d. The Trusteeship Council**

This is an improvement of the mandate commission of the League of Nations. Its

members were elected by the General Assembly. It was to look after the mandated territories of the inactive or defunct League of Nations in order to ensure fair treatment by the mandated states. The states in question were 11 in total. They were territories taken from Germany and her allies after World War I and those grabbed from Italy and Japan in 1945. The trusteeship council visited the territories under the trusteeship system to assess how they were being administered. The Council could send questionnaires to states concerned with the aim of getting information regarding the political, economic and social developments of the mandated territories. The major aim of the council was to prepare the territories for either self-rule or union with other existing states.

#### **e. The International Court of Justice**

The International Court of Justice is an improvement of the permanent Court of International Justice of the League of Nations. It is based at The Hague with 15 judges of different nationalities, elected for a three year term by the General Assembly and Security Council jointly. The court caters for legal matters especially cases between two or more states. It also advises the other organs on legal issues.

#### **f. The Secretariat**

The Secretariat is the administrative organ of the UN. The Secretary General is the Chief Administrative Officer of the Secretariat. He or she is appointed by the General Assembly on the recommendation of the Security Council for a 5 year term. The Secretary General is assisted by a large number of subordinates who have to scrutinize the various roles of the UNO. The Secretariat of the U.N.O headquarters is in New York. The Secretary General in accordance to the UN charter brings issues to be discussed before the council and makes annual report about the performance of the Secretariat. The bill for maintaining the Secretariat is paid by all member states of the UN. However, USA makes the biggest contribution in comparison to other members of the UN.

Secretariat is the administrative organ of the UN. It implements the policies and decisions taken up by organs of the UN. It consists of international civil servants who, while serving the UN, must forget their national loyalties and work for securing the interests of the UN. There are about 4000 employees of the UN Secretariat. Their

salaries are paid by UN. The Secretariat General is the head of the Secretariat. He is called “the watch dog of the UN”. He is appointed for a term of 5 years by the UN General Assembly on the recommendation of the Security Council.

### **g. Functions of the Secretariat**

The secretariat performed the following duties in the organisation that is carrying out all paper work of the organisation. It made recommendations to the Security Council. Interpreting speeches and translate documents into the UN official languages. Organising and inviting member states to international conferences. It mediated in international disputes. To administer all peace keeping operations of the organisations.

### **h. Specialised Agencies of the UN**

The Specialised Agencies of the UN have been playing a significant role in implementing the policies, decisions and programmes of the UN. These are looking after specific areas and issues like research, health, labour, trade, culture and human rights. Some of the important specialised Agencies of the UN are:

- International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA)
- UN Industrial Development Organisation (UNIDO)
- Food and Agricultural Organisation (FAO)
- International Labour Organisation (ILO)
- World Health Organisation (WHO)
- International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD)
- World Meteorological Organisation(WMO)
- UN International Children Emergency Fund (UNICEF)
- UN Environment Programme (UNEP)

Now that we have identified the specialised agencies of the United Nations organisation, we now focus on the functions of some of the specialised agencies mentioned above:

### **i. Food and Agricultural Organisation (FAO)**

The Food and Agricultural Organisation (FAO) was formed on 16 October 1945. Interestingly, 16 October is now widely celebrated across the globe as the World Food Day. The main functions of Food and Agricultural Organisation are to promote rural development and reduce poverty through Agricultural development. Improve food security as well as nutrition. To help member states in seed production. Helping member states in soil conservation and protection and also helps member countries in animal disease control and land reform.

### **j. World Health Organisation (WHO)**

This department dealt with health problems and received alarms of some epidemics in the world. The department sought to improve the health of mankind and the quality of life of all the people. It also controlled diseases such as cholera, malaria, tuberculosis. The organisation also aimed at reducing mortality rates. Another primary duty was to create a healthy environment.

### **k. International Labour Organisation (ILO)**

We have seen people going for work in most cases and there are various challenges these workers face. The United Nations organisation formed the branch on workers' rights and privileges known as the ILO which worked to promote human labour rights and also improve the working conditions of workers. It improved living conditions of workers and create international labour stands. It aimed at fighting against HIV/AIDS. The organisation also ensured on fight against child labour

### **l. United Nations International Children`s Fund (UNICEF)**

Children have rights and privileges which also need realisation. The United Nations has another specialised unit that dealt with children's rights. It carried out the following duties which included advocating for the protection of children's rights and meeting the basic needs of children. It also ensured special protection for the most disadvantaged children in the world. It was also formed to eradicate all forms of violence and exploitation of those with disabilities. The organisation also promoted the rights of women and girls. It supported participation of women in the political, economical development of their communities

## Work of the United Nations Organisation

### 20.3.5 Study Tips B

Since its establishment in 1945, the United Nations (UN) has been very active in extensive areas political, social and economic reforms and challenges including peace-keeping, arms control, the North South problem, social and human rights issues. Economic problems were also addressed by the United Nations organisation. Consider the strengths and weaknesses of the organisation in your study.

The United Nations organisation politically made progress in the settling of disputes in Africa, Asia, America and Europe. In the area of peace-keeping, in particular, the UN has played an important role in Namibia achieving independence. The peace-keeping operations of the United Nations, traditionally geared to truce supervision activities, has expanded into more comprehensive activities including observation of elections, as occasioned by its operations in Namibia. In August 1990 the UN Security Council decided on comprehensive and mandatory sanctions, for the first time in the past 22 years against Iraq's invasion of Kuwait. At the same time International cooperation extended through the United Nations and its organisations has become progressively important in dealing with global issues such as drugs and the environment. However the United Nations still has its problems including financial difficulties and organisational reform in economic fields. Tackling these problems will be very important for the UN in winning the confidence of the international community in the future. Also the new trend in the world away from confrontation towards dialogue makes necessary review of the systems and functions of the United Nations.

### 20.3.6 Political Activities of the United Nations

#### a. Korean crisis 1950-1953

This was when Communist troops from North Korea invaded South Korea. The Council decided that North Korea had breached the world peace and called on their withdrawal. The north Koreans ignored and continued to advance which made Russia boycott and protest against the united nation security council..The United States with other 14 countries backed the United Nations and sent troops forcing Koreans to withdraw and United States was asked to take command. The United States in this war refused the use of atomic bombing. China joined on the Korean side and this made war tense forcing America and United Nations for a backup which saw Chinese and Koreans retreating. An armistice was signed and the organisation was a success.

## **b. Suez Canal crisis**

President Nasser of Egypt nationalized the Suez Canal Company in 1956. Nasser wanted the revenue from the nationalization to finance the dam and pay share holders who were mainly French and British. Israel attacked Egypt aiming at stopping the guerrilla bandits (fela yeen) organized by Nasser to attack Israel. Britain and France ordered Egypt and Israeli troops to withdraw and be at 15km distance but Egypt refused on ultimatum condition. When the ultimatum expired Britain and France sent airstrikes on Egypt air fields. The national Security Council sends a message condoning use of force and the issue was referred to the general assembly which called for a ceasefire and withdrawal from Egyptian invading forces. It called for a United Nations emergency force which was mandated to see withdrawal of troops and saw Egypt in consent to withdrawal. It patrolled boundaries between Egypt and Israel hence peace was established.

## **c. The Middle East**

The situation in the occupied territories of the Middle East by various war groups which worsened political and social instability became a major focus of the Middle East discussions at the UN General Assembly and Security Council. The 44<sup>th</sup> session of the General Assembly in 1989 passed, by a majority vote, an intifada" (uprising) resolution denouncing Israel's policy on the occupied territories an action which attested to a high degree of concern among countries about this issue. In a related development, the Security Council resolved again as it did in July and August of 1989, that Israel's expulsion of the Palestinian's from the occupied territories violated the Geneva Convention relative to the protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War. Regarding the emigration of the Jews from the Soviet Union which became a major issue in 1990, the UN Security Council held a session at the request if the Soviet Union between March and May 1990. However, no resolution has been adopted.

Also regarding the killings of Palestinian labourers by a retired soldier of the Israeli National Defence Forces on 20 May 1990 there is no resolution by the Security Council on the differences which prevailed amongst parties concerned. Another development was a proposal made to improve the Palestine Liberation Organisation movement (PLO) status in the United Nations and help it obtain memberships in specialised agencies. Japan, which does not recognise the P.L.O as a state takes a standard that such a proposal, will not favour the peace process in the Middle East.

#### **d. Iran-Iraq**

After the cease-fire in August 1988, the UN Secretary-General has hosted four Iran-Iraq foreign Ministers meetings in 1988 and 1989 but no significant progress has been made. During the peace negotiations, over which the UN Secretary-General presided practically no debate took place on the issue at General Assembly and Security Council. In February 1990, however, the Chairman of the Security Council issued out a statement in support of the peace efforts by the Secretary-General.

### **African crises**

#### **e. South Africa**

At its 44<sup>th</sup> session of the UN General Assembly in 1989, 12 resolutions related to apartheid were submitted to a vote were adopted by an overwhelming majority as they had been in previous years. A resolution seeking comprehensive sanctions, which censured the Federal Republic of Germany (FRG) by name, was adopted over Japan's and other countries' opposition. The General Assembly's special session on apartheid held in December 1989, adopted unanimously a declaration, which was both constructive and harmonious. In his address to this session, then Parliamentary Vice Minister Tanaka of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs stated Japan's strong opposition to apartheid. He said Japan welcomed the policies of the de Klerk Government but would continue sanctions against the country so long as no substantial improvement was made.

#### **f. Namibia**

In January 1989 the UN Security Council passed a resolution to implement in April the resolution to establish the United Nations Transition Assistance Group (UNTAG) and called for material and personnel support from member countries. In November a constitutional assembly election was held under observation of the UNTAG. As a result Namibia became independent in March 1990 and joined the United Nations in April. Japan provided a \$46 million special contribution to the UNTAG as well as 13,550,000 voluntary contribution as start-up costs to purchase automobiles and other equipment. Also Japan dispatched 27 election observes and a supporting staff. Japan's supply of personnel was highly rated by the International Community

as representing the country's initiation of its full scale assistance in the UN peace keeping operations

### **g. Central America**

Conflicts in Central America made major progress towards a peaceful settlement. This owes much of the active role played by the United Nations. A general election was held on 25 February 1990. The Committee on International Assistance and Verification (CIAV), which was established by the UN and the Organisation of American states (OAS) in September 1989 in response to a request by Central American Countries, started its activity to ensure the dissolution and repatriation of the anti-government guerrillas . Furthermore, the United Nations Observation Mission of Central America (ONUCA), established as a security verification mechanism at the UN Security Council in September 1989, disarmed the anti-government guerrillas under an agreement in May 1990 and is keeping watch on boarder areas. Under the circumstances, the UN General Assembly held in October 1989 adopted by consensus a resolution appreciating peace-making efforts of the Central American countries and the United Nations and calling for the UN Secretary –General to sustain the UN contribution of the peace efforts in the region.

## **20.3.7 Economic Work of the United Nations**

### **a. Special Session of the General Assembly**

The 18<sup>th</sup> Session of the General Assembly devoted to international economic cooperation, in particular the revitalisation of economic growth and development of the developing countries was held in April 1990. With representatives including more than 60 Prime Ministers and Cabinet Ministers in attendance, the session passed a declaration with consensus. The first special session held on economic problems in 10 years since 1980 served to charter a direction of the North-South dialogue at the United Nations during the 1990s.

### **b. Drift-Net Fishing Problem**

The indiscriminate catching of marine resources by large-scale drift-net fishing of cuttlefish in the Northern Pacific and albacore in the Southern Pacific has become

an international issue. At the 44th UN General Assembly draft resolutions were proposed by the United States and Japan: the US resolution called for suspension of drift-net fishing after the lapse of a certain period of time, and Japanese resolution offered to take such measures if needed on the basis of scientific evidence. Following coordination efforts between Japan and the US the General Assembly passed by consensus a resolution recommending all members of the international community to agree to moratoria on drift-net fishing by June 1972 with the understanding that such a measure will not be imposed, should effective conservation and management measures be taken.

## The role of the United Nations in the promotion and protection of human rights

The United Nations has established an international standard of acceptable behaviour by nations and focused on human rights practices that threaten those standards. It has promoted human rights declarations and conventions which were adopted by the General assembly underscoring their universality. Human rights pertaining to women, children, prisoners, detainees, refugees, the disabled and violations such as genocide, racial discriminations, and torture are now part of international law which monitors how states comply with international standards on the human rights. It also investigates cases of human rights violations to the established laws. The Office of the High Commission for Human Rights receives reports and communication from individuals claiming human rights violations and the office investigates. The O.H.C.H.R defends serious human rights violations such as torture, extrajudicial execution, by sending urgent messages to the state concerned seeking clarifications and appealing for the guarantees of rights of challenged victims. The United Nations then compiles data by preparing reports and studies on human rights worldwide. The United Nations is a forum of appeal where groups or individuals bring complaints against the state to the United Nations once all domestic remedies have been exhausted. The United Nations secretary general acts as a discrete diplomat and confidentially raises human rights concerns with member states. It also acts as a fact finder monitoring on human rights abuses and violations from specific countries.

Human rights possess a universal value of mankind. They form the basis of the world's peace and stability and as a result, have actively taken part in UN activities related to human rights for the protection and promoting of human rights in the world. Most importantly, the Human Rights Council is an inter-governmental body within the

United Nations system responsible for strengthening the promotion and protection of human rights around the globe and for addressing situations of human rights violations and make recommendations on them. In May 1990, Japan was re-elected as a member of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights.

The United Nations has repeatedly emphasised the need to integrate human rights into the broad range of its activities. It is essential to recognise the potential of almost all UN human rights mechanisms and procedures for contributing to the protection and promotion of children's rights.

## Human rights treaties

The creation of a body of international human rights law is one of the United Nations' great achievements. The United Nations has helped negotiate more than 70 human rights and declarations. Many focused on the rights of vulnerable groups such as women, children, and persons with disabilities, minorities and indigenous peoples. Together, these treaties and declarations helped create a "culture of human rights" throughout the world, providing a powerful tool to protect and promote all rights. In accordance with the treaties, states parties have set up treaty body committees that may call upon States to respond to allegations, adopt decisions and publish them along with criticism or recommendations.

## 20.4. World Conferences and Summits

The standards articulated in the international covenants and conventions have been reinforced through declarations and plans of action that have emerged from a series of World Conference organised by the United Nations. Those conferences have gained importance as real forums for discussing and deciding on national and international policies regarding such as global issues as the environment, human rights and economic development. They focus world attention on these issues and place them squarely on the global agenda.

UNICEF's work in the area of child rights is informed by the World Summit for Children (1990), as well as by the World Conference on Education for All (1990), the World Conference on Human Rights (1993), the World Summit for Social Development (1995), the Fourth World Conference on Women (1995), the Millennium Summit (2000), and the World Summit and special Session On Children (2005). The 1993

World Conference on Human Rights, in particular, recognised that the human rights of children constitute a priority for action within the United Nations systems. At the 2005 Special Session on Children, Members States committed themselves to improving the situation of children.

## Other mechanisms for protecting human rights

The United Nations promotes respect for the law and protection of human rights in many other ways, including:

### 20.4.1 Monitoring the human rights records of various nations

The treaty body committees receive technical, logistical and financial support from the United Nations. The United Nations also has an Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights, which is mandated to promote and protect the enjoyment and full realisation by all people of human rights.

### 20.4.2 Appointing `special procedures` to address specific country situations or broader issues

The United Nations may also appoint experts (sometimes titled special reporters, representatives or independent experts); to address a specific human rights issue or particular country. These experts may conduct studies, visit specific countries, interview victims, make specific appeals and submit reports and recommendations.

These procedures include a number of child-specific procedures and many broader procedures which increasingly make reference to children's rights. Child specific procedures include the Special Reporter on sale of children, child prostitution and child pornography; and the Special Representative of the Secretary-General on the impact of armed conflict on children.

Some broader procedures include increasingly references to children's rights in the context of their particular mandates. Such procedures include the Special Rapporteur on the right to education; on extrajudicial, summary or arbitrary executions; on violence against women; on freedom of religion or belief; and on contemporary forms of racism, racial discrimination, xenophobia and related intolerance; and also an independent Expert on human rights and extreme poverty.

Most importantly, the US War against Taliban's and Al Qaeda in Afghanistan and the US-War in Iraq had put a question mark on the relevance of the UN. The US operators in Iraq do not enjoy the sanction of the UNO. Further, the UN has not been successful in securing disarmament as well as in preventing the outbreak of local wars (civil wars) and terrorism in various parts of the world. However, this does not mean that the UN has totally failed to serve the international community. It has successfully prevented the outbreak of a third world war, which could have occurred any time after the Second World War. In fact, the UN played an effective role in keeping peace.

### 20.4.3 Successes of the United Nations

With its mandate to promote peace, you will realise in this sub unit that the United Nations aimed at promoting human rights through the following successes it had in different countries.

The UNO came with the need to improve economic co-operation and status of the World. World economies were shattered by the destructions caused by the Second World War. It was to mobilise funds to help weaker and poor states to reconstruct and strengthen their economic positions. Children's rights and welfare were promoted and protected by UNO. Children's rights were officially declared in 1959 and it was promulgated to the whole world through various sensitisation programs. The rights declared included the right to education, parenthood, name, nationality, play, leisure etc. UNICEF funded children's education most especially funding the girl child education and welfare in many countries of the world. All these, reduced the abuse of children's rights and other related injustices against children. UNO reduced the sales and consumption of intoxicating drugs like opium and marijuana. This was achieved by sensitizing people through seminars and mass media such as radio, TV, magazines etc. about the dangers of such drugs and drug abuse generally. The anti-drug commission declared the above drugs illegal and those who handled them were to be severely punished by respective countries. These measures checked on the production, transportation, sales and consumption of such drugs. Eventually, the rate of crimes committed by consumers of such drugs was significantly reduced by 1970.

Environmental threats were successfully checked and reduced by the UNO. By 1970, the UN had embarked on a global sensitisation program to control pollution, desertification and improve on rural and urban settlement patterns. Bio diversity program with emphasis on afforestation and reforestation programs alongside

utilisation of world forest were promoted. These were accomplished through the mass media, workshops and seminars. These programs helped to conserve the environment against threats like pollution and desertification. Decolonization and democratization was achieved by the U.N.O through the Trusteeship council. The council was able to oversee the administration of the mandate states and provide guidance towards the granting of independence. The council was able to guard against exploitation and oppression of the colonies by those powers mandated to govern them. This facilitated independence of Countries like Libya, Somali land, Namibia, Indonesia, Kuwait, Israel and Palestine. The U.N.O was also influential in promoting democratic governance in the post independent era of such countries. This helped the colonised states to recover easily from the long term consequences of colonial oppression and exploitation. U.N.O scored success in the reduction of cultural intolerance and racial segregation. It achieved this through joint research and cultural exchanges.

By 1970, UNESCO had offices in all the member states where people were sensitised about the value of other cultures. UNO also decampaigned Apartheid in South Africa and anti-Semitism in Europe. In 1970, the Economic and social council organised a global youth conference in which the challenges facing the youth were discussed. This promoted international co-operation and tolerance amongst people of diverse cultural background. As far as world peace is concerned, the U.N through the Security Council registered some achievements. It diffused many conflicts and tensions that could have led to the outbreak of the third world war. The Berlin blockade by Russia in 1948 was lifted through the intervention of the President of the Security Council from 1950-53, it dealt with conflict between North Korea and South Korea where a truce was signed in July 1953 and hostilities ended. In 1960, the council settled the dispute between India and Pakistan over Kashmir. The Suez Canal crisis was also peacefully resolved in 1956 when the General Assembly compelled France, Britain and Israel to withdraw their offensive weapons from Egypt. A number of other political conflicts were also successfully resolved by the International Court of Justice. Thus, the role of the UN through the Security Council and General Assembly was very instrumental in the preservation and maintenance of global peace, security and stability. Disarmament was one of the most remarkable contributions of UNO towards world peace.

In 1946, the Security Council set up the atomic energy commission to control the production of atomic energy and weapons. In 1963 and 1969, the council presided over the signing of test ban treaties that banned the -production and use of weapons of mass destruction such as chemical, biological and nuclear weapons. The Security

Council also initiated SALT I (Strategic Arms Limitation Talks) in 1948 and SALTII in 1956 through which nations cooperated to limit the amount of long range missiles and bombers in their possession. Although the UN partially failed in disarmament, it succeeded in reducing the production of such weapons and frustrating attempt by countries like USA who possessed such weapons from using them. The establishment of the Jewish state of Israel in 1948 was an achievement for UNO. The congress system had granted the Jews citizenship in various states where they had fled due to persecution. However during the course of World War II, the Jews were again persecuted and massacred by the Nazis, Fascists and Arabs. After World War II, a serious dispute and often wars arose between the Jews and the Arabs. In 1947, the conflict was brought to the UN Security Council, which did a series of investigations. In 1948, the council created the Jewish state of Israel out of the Arab state of Palestine. This was a positive step in the protection of minorities and displaced persons from homelessness, persecution and massacre. Increased membership since its inception in 1945 is a testimony of UN's success. In 1945 when UNO was formed, only 51 states signed the charter and became members. However, UNO's popularity tremendously increased due to numerous achievements it registered to the extent that its membership grew to over 100 by 1970. This brought more states together and increased the level of cooperation that maintained global peace, law, order and stability.

UNO addressed the issue of justice and accountability for international crimes committed during the Second World War. The International Court of Justice based at Hague was one of the organs of UNO created to handle legal issues related to war crimes and compensation. Nazi war criminals such as Goebbels who was Hitler's chief of propaganda and Himmler Heinrich were tried at the Nuremburg tribunal although they committed suicide. Several other Nazis, Fascists, Japanese, Italians etc. who persecuted the Jews and committed other crimes were also tried and punished accordingly. Other than war crimes, the court also resolved several disputes that involved member states by 1970. This laid a sound and vibrant foundation for justice, accountability and peaceful resolution of disputes in Europe.

### Reflection question!!!

You have by noted that the United Nations Organisations has indeed made some achievements. Can you briefly list some of its achievements in maintaining peace in the world? Take the following as starting point and give examples.

- a) It has been successful in maintaining peace and stability in the world.
- b) The United Nations has attempted to raise peace-keeping forces in war-torn areas.
- c) It has done a fairly good amount of work in the settlement of several controversies, which could have posed serious threats to the world peace.
- d) The U.N.O has contributed greatly in the field of decolonisation, human rights, disarmament.

#### 20.4.4 Weaknesses /failures of the United Nations organization.

Having realized the successes of the United Nations in promoting peace to the world through various channels, there is need to consider that peace was not attained and various human rights claims were not achieved. You will observe that there are more failures than successes in its desire to promote human rights violated by greedy dictators. African leaders Kamuzu Banda in Malawi and Mobutu Sese Seko in Congo demonstrate the failure of the democratisation program of the UN. This was because some members of the UNO especially USA and USSR supported such dictators as long as they were able to further their political ideology. The rise and existence of neo-colonialism and its associated evils in third world countries exposed the failure of UNO. After colonialism, European powers resorted to neo-colonialism as an indirect means to control, exploit and oppress the third world countries. This was accomplished through imposing unfavourable foreign political ideologies like capitalism and communism, economic policies such as liberalisation and establishment of military bases e.g. USA in the Middle East and Africa by more developed nations in less developed countries. By 1970, these practices had led to underdevelopment of third world countries and subjected formerly independent states to depend on their former colonial masters in a neo colonial relationship. The UNO is therefore blamed for keeping aloof as neocolonialism undermined the independence and democratisation process of nations.

##### **a. Congo crisis**

The United Nations organisation had less involvement in the Congo since fighting still continued until the Congolese resolved their own problems through military action. The secretary general died in a plane crash whilst trying to solve the problems The

UN's diplomatic and military intervention in the Congo crisis of 1960s failed to yield peace. In 1960, Belgium prematurely granted Congo independence leaving behind intertribal war that the UN failed to settle. It was a shame to UN that Congolese Prime minister, Patrice Lumumba and UN Secretary General, Dag Hammarskjold lost their lives during the crisis in Congo. The UN is blamed for failure to restore law and order in Congo that was taken advantage of by Mobuto Sese Seko, the then Congolese army commander to rise to power (1966) and establish a classic despotic government in Congo. Above all, the UN intervention in Congo was condemned by Russia as a USA's guise to extend her imperialism. Worst of all, the Congo venture was too expensive that it almost brought the UN into financial crisis, given that Russia and other states declined to pay their share of the cost

### **b. Angola crisis**

The United Nations was able to mobilise peace keepers and its involvement was weak because Jonas Savimbi forces still raged on until he was eliminated by government forces in 2002

### **c. Rwanda crisis**

The United Nations delayed in moving hundreds of thousands of people who had perished in the genocide attacks between the Hutu and Tutsi ethnic group over political conflicts. Not much was done there under the United Nations

### **d. Democratic Republic of Congo**

United Nations refused to send troops to the region and war still raged on until 2002 when the belligerents met in South Africa and planned on ceasefire war still continued. The organisation sent very few troops who could hardly do anything to stop the fighting

### **e. Germany and Cold War**

Cold war politics made Germany to be partitioned into two i.e. west Germany with the ideology of capitalism and East Germany with communism. In 1948, the Berlin wall was created to completely separate West Germany from East Germany. Although the blockade was lifted in 1949 through the intervention of the UN Security Council, Germany nevertheless remained a divided country between die West and East. This was associated with diplomatic aggression, sabotage and hostility perpetuated by USA and USSR on the background. UNO should therefore be discredited for its negligence that made Germany to be torn apart during the cold war era.

### **f. Racial discrimination**

This is when one is separated from all forms of rights and privileges because of skin colour and the U.N.O failed to fully wipe out cultural intolerance and racism. Though the UN embarked on global sensitisation campaign against racism and cultural intolerance through UNESCO, the campaign was not fully successful by 1970. People still remained intolerant and failed to live in harmony with those from diverse cultural background. For instance, Arabs and Jews, Europeans and Africans; often failed to live in harmony and that was why they fought each other on racial basis. Apartheid in S Africa where Africans were systematically segregated by the whites was the worst form of racism that the UNO failed to address. The fact that Apartheid and other cultural arrogance cited above still existed by 1970 illustrates the failure of UNO.

### **g. Disarmament**

Disarmament from the previous unit on the First and Second World War have been the main causes of another conflicts and wars. The UN's policies on disarmament, weapons of mass destruction and space exploration were great failures. By 1945, it was only America with Atomic bomb but nearly all the Super Powers had such weapons of mass destruction by 1970. Even third world countries like India, Pakistan, North Korea and Iraq possessed such weapons. Even when the testing of such weapons was outlawed (prevented) by the UN, America and Russia persisted to do so. The UN and America practiced double standard of frustrating smaller nations from acquiring weapons of mass destruction while the great permanent members of the UN continued to maintain and manufacture such weapons.

## **h. Chinese war**

Politically and militarily, the UN registered more failures as an instrument of peace by 1970. The Iraq-Iran war persisted for 8 years without any concrete settlement by the UN. It also failed in the Chinese war of 1953 where America openly supported Chiang Keiserk and Russia supported Maotse-tung. In the Vietnam war of 1967-73, USA Intervened and perpetuated the conflict and the UNO did nothing against USA.

## **i. Arab-Israeli conflict**

The UN totally failed in the Arab-Israeli conflict since it was formed up to 1970. From 1948 when the state of Israel was created, the Israelites and Arabs conflicted over the disputed territories in areas like the Gaza strip and Jerusalem city. Tension boiled to war point when Israel on her own terms declared Jerusalem her city. An Ineffective economic sanction was imposed on Israel, which never compelled her to change her position on Jerusalem. This led to suicide bombings, violence and counter violence that led to massive death and destruction of property. The UN proved incompetent of resolving the conflict, which made it to remain one of the most serious conflicts in the world by 1970.

## **j. Korean War**

The UN failed in the Korean war of 1950-53 because of the double standard policy of USA and USSR who are permanent members of the Security Council. In the war, USSR supported North Korea while USA backed South Korea, which rendered UN's policy of uniting North Korea and South Korea a total failure.

## **k. Terrorism**

Terrorism refers to acts of violence to create an emotional response through making the victims suffer. United Nations Organisation failed to totally eradicate terrorism in the world. By 1970, the world experienced rampant assassinations, hijack of planes, planting of time bombs and suicide bombings especially in Asia and the Middle East. The most disastrous ones occurred in the Middle East between the Palestinians

and Israelis over the disputed Gaza strip and Jerusalem city. Terrorism was also perpetuated by USA and USSR to enforce their rival political ideologies of capitalism and communism respectively. It was ironical that USA and USSR who are permanent members of the Security Council could resort to terrorism without being restrained by the UNO.

## I. Economic weaknesses

The loans and grants from the IMF and world bank had some negative consequences on the development of the Third World countries they had strings attached that promoted political ideologies of the Western Capitalistic Powers sometimes the third world countries were forced to invest in non-priority areas on the directive of the lending body i.e. IMF or world bank besides it accelerated unemployment because of the so called experts who were sent and paid very highly to monitor the aids or projects worst of all the loans were lent at very high interest rates and that is why poor countries who depended on such loans became poorer by 1970.



### Activity 20.5

**As we are still focusing on the weaknesses or failures of the United Nations Organisation, which failures have you traced so far and what other failures do you think the United Nations encountered. Discuss with your friend some of the activities you think were failures of the United Nation from the successes already raised. Take the following as guide to your discussion and some are completed for you.**

- i. It lacks adequate funds to meet all its objectives
- ii. The veto power of the five permanent members of the Security Council has virtually left his powerful UN organ at the mercy of "Big-Five" that is USA, UK, Russia, France and China. Hence, the need is to reform the UN system from within and outside
- iii. There has been a big increase in the members of the UN. As such, the UN Security Council needs an expansion for giving due representatives to all continents and major powers of the world like.....
- iv. The issue of Veto Power needs to be debated and amended

- v. The voice of the smaller nations like (give states).....should carry equal weight in all UN decisions.
- vi. The UN peacekeeping role needs to be restructured technically and financially.

#### **n. Drugs**

These are the most dangerous areas neglected by the organisation. Although the UNO reduced drug trafficking, it failed to eliminate it completely. This was because the JNO did not have an effective and competent force to control drug trafficking on land, air and the sea. Thus, the sales and consumption of cocaine, opium and marijuana continued to the extent that it became an acceptable way of life amongst many societies in the Middle East. This promoted ant-social behaviours and crimes like murder, defilement, suicide bombing etc. These undermined peace, stability and prosperity In Europe by 1970.

#### **o. Invasion of Hungary and Czechoslovakia**

In the field of politics and peace, the UN failed more than it succeeded. This was due to the inherent weakness of the UN itself. For instance, the veto powers of the five permanent members of the Security Council made it impossible to resolve and implement several problems and policies respectively. For example, Russia invaded Hungary in 1956 and Czechoslovakia in 1958 respectively and vetoed the Security Council's resolution to withdraw her troops on both occasions. This means that the veto powers of the five permanent members gave them a "license" to wage aggression and block any UN resolution against them.

#### **p. Independence and sovereignty**

The decolonisation and democratization programs were incomplete by 1970. The UNO did not have a clear policy for granting independence to the colonised nations. The independence especially of African nations was mainly due to the efforts of the oppressed and exploited Africans other than the UN. Moreover, America and other Western capitalists were against decolonisation. This is because imperialism is the highest form of Capitalism and that is why USA supported Apartheid, which explains

why South Africa, Angola and Mozambique and Rhodesia were still colonised by 1970. The rise and existence of autocratic and undemocratic leaders like Fidel Castro in Cuba.

### **q. Human Rights**

We all have rights as explained in unit 7. From your observation which rights of citizens would you have hoped the United Nations was to address?

The Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) of 1948 failed to totally achieve its objectives by 1970. It was not fully accepted in many states especially in Arab nations as a western concept designed to undermine traditional culture. For instance, provision for equality between man and woman was rejected as a ploy to destroy the family tradition that had sustained communities since nations were created. It did not also have laws to punish those who violated the rights stated in the declaration. The UDHR just presents a strong moral appeal and a common standard of rights to be achieved by all nations. This made many governments and dictators to easily violate human rights with impunity (without punishment) as there is no legal provision for punishment in the UDHR.

### **r. Children's rights**

Children's rights are instrumental in achieving a society free from oppression. Children have rights and can you list some of the rights which you feel the United Nations could have addressed for you?

The promotion and protection of children's rights failed to succeed in some other ways. The UN emphasised the rights of children without the corresponding duties that made many nations who believed in children working for their families to ignore it. The UN did not also provide a law to punish those who violated children's rights by 1970, thereby making it easy for those who violate children's rights to do so with impunity. Worst of all, some rights of the children that were promoted by the UN contradicted cultural practices of some societies. For instance, the right to equality

between girls and boys could not be accepted in many African and Arab states because the society valued boys more than girls. This explains why such societies continued to violate the right to education of the girl child more than boys through early marriage. Thus, UNO failed to fully achieve its objective of promoting children's rights by 1970. E.g. right to education, health, shelter, identity.

### s. Summary

The unit has shown the formation and aims of the United Nations Organisation (U.N.O). The UNO formed on the 24<sup>th</sup> of October 1945 to maintain peace in the world as well as fostering international co-operation among nations. The main organs of the UNO include the General Assembly, the Security Council, the Secretariat, International Court of Justice and the Trusteeship Council. Besides, the specialised agencies of the UNO include the World Health Organisation and the International Labour Organisation, to mention a few. The unit concluded by examining the work of the UNO as well as its successes and failures.

### Reflection

After you have read about the various international cooperation organisations, it is important that you reflect on the origins, formation, aims, structures strengths and weaknesses of the various organisations. You should also reflect on the importance of each group towards attainment of its aims and promotion of peace and human right in the world. By now you should be in a position to assess the effectiveness of the groups and reasons from failure to achieve their aims.

### READING LIST

The following reading list will help you understand some of the information provided in this unit.

Mlambo A.S *Focus study Aids "O" Level History Revision* (1999) College Press

Moyana H and Sibanda M *The African Heritage Book 4* (2003) Zimbabwe Publishing House

*Total History Book 4 An Integrated Approach*

## ASSIGNMENT

Discuss any 6 successes of the United Nations organisation and six Failures in its mandate to promote peace in the world.

## ASSESSMENT

- 1.a. List any five human rights which all people are entitled according to the universal declaration of human rights
- b. Outline the role of the United Nations in promoting and protecting human rights worldwide.
- c. To what extent has the United Nations succeeded in promoting human rights worldwide?

### 20.5.7. Sample Assessment Questions

- 1a. List any five members of the Commonwealth of Nations in Southern Africa. (5)
  - b. Outline the benefits enjoyed by members of the Commonwealth of Nations. (12)
  - c. How far have Africans in southern Africa benefited from the Commonwealth of Nations. (8)
- 
- 2a. Identify any five countries in the formation of Non-Aligned Movement (5)
    - b. Describe the achievements made by the Non-Aligned Movement (12)
    - c. To what extent were the leaders successful in their aims? (8)
- 
- 3a. List any five official languages used by the United Nations Organisation. (5)
    - b. Describe the role of the United Nations in dealing with the conflicts in Congo. (12)
    - c. How effective has the organisation been successful in dealing with African conflicts in Congo (8)

The following will provide a guideline to the assessment questions above.

**1a. List any five members which formed the Commonwealth of Nations. (5)**

Britain

Australia

Canada

New Zealand

South Africa

Ireland

**b. Describe the functions of Commonwealth of Nations. (12)**

- Encouraged scientific research
- Provided scholarships
- Provided peace keeping monitoring forces
- Building infrastructure e.g. Universities
- Provided financial, technical and education support
- Encouraged cultural exchange programmes
- Provided health to poverty stricken countries

**c. How successful has the Commonwealth been in dealing with the problems affecting its members**

c1

- Nigeria received help to develop hydro electricity schemes
- It set up universities in Malawi

However,

- Commonwealth was unable to prevent or solve serious problems such as civil wars
- Britain joined the European Union distancing herself
- Failed to stop members from withdrawing
- Zimbabwe pulled out

**2. a. Identify any five countries in the formation of Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) (5)**

Egypt

India

Ghana

Iran

Yugoslavia

**b. Describe the achievements made by the Non-Aligned Movement (12)**

- Criticised US policy
- Promoted cultural diversity
- Advocated for reforms in the United Nations
- Called for sustainable development
- Promoted self determination in Puerto Rico
- Promoted self determination in western Saharawi

**c. To what extent was the organisation successful in maintaining its aims (8)**

- Managed to openly attack the USA policies on NAM
- There was promotion of self sustainability

However,

- It sided with super powers
- They were opportunistic leaders in NAM
- It had no future goals
- It was ruined by selfishness

**3a. List any five official languages used by the United Nations Organisation. (5)**

English

Spanish

French

Chinese

Russian

Arabic

Swahili

**b. Describe the role of the United Nations in dealing with the conflicts in Congo. (12)**

- Congo Zaire immediately developed into a crisis immediately after gaining independence
- It sends 20000 soldiers after war broke out
- It established a funding to deal with the crises
- It tried to unite the local leadership of Patrice Lumumba, Moise Tshombe and Kasarabvu
- The crises cost the life of UN secretary general and other soldiers
- It managed to restore order

**c. How effective has the organisation been successful in dealing conflicts in Congo? (8)**

c1

- Sending of troops to Congo
- Mediating for peace between heavy war lords was achieved

c 2 However

- Congo conflicts continued
- Lack of regional peace keeping force delayed the peace process
- Lack of funding
- Country was too big to administer later leading to division East and West conflict.

## Sample examination paper - History paper 2

- 1 (a) Identify any five ethnic groups in the Balkan states. (5)  
(b) Describe the role played by Russia and Austria-Hungary in increasing tension in the Balkans between 1907 and 1913. (12)  
(c) To what extent was Russia responsible for the outbreak of the First World War? (8)
  
- 2 (a) Identify few new weapons used during the First World War. (5)  
(b) Describe the events which led to the failure of the Schlieffen Plan. (12)  
(c) How important was the role of the Belgians in the failure of the Schlieffen Plan. (8)
  
- 3 (a) List any five territories lost by Germany in Africa after the First World War. (5)  
(b) Outline the aims of the "Big Three" at the Paris Peace Conference in 1919. (12)  
(c) To what extent were the aims of Clemenceau fulfilled in the Treaty of Versailles. (8)
  
- 4 (a) Name any five leaders involved in the formation of League of Nations. (5)  
(b) Describe the successes of the League of Nations in the 1920s. (12)  
(c) How successful was the League's International Labour Organisation (ILO) in improving the working conditions among member states. (8)
  
- 5 (a) Identify any five aims of Mussolini's domestic policy. (12)  
(b) Describe the rise of Mussolini from 1919 to 1922. (12)  
(c) How far did the political problems in Italy enable Mussolini to seize power? (8)

- 6 (a) State any five features of German Nazism. (5)  
(b) Describe Hitler's domestic policy from 1933 to 1939. (12)  
(c) To what extent did the Germans benefit from Hitler's domestic policy? (8)
- 7 (a) Identify any five measures introduced by F.D Roosevelt to solve the problems of the Great Depression. (5)  
(b) Describe measures taken by F.D Roosevelt to solve the problems of agriculture during the Great Depression. (12)  
(c) How successful were these measures in solving the problems of agriculture during this period? (8)
- 8 (a) State any five aims of Hitler's foreign policy. (5)  
(b) Outline the acts of aggression committed by Hitler up to 1939. (12)  
(c) To what extent did these acts of aggression contribute to the outbreak of the Second World War? (8)
- 9 (a) Identify the two leaders and their countries which followed the policy of appeasement. (4)  
(b) Outline the causes of the Second World War of 1939-1945. (13)  
(c) To what extent were Britain and France to blame for the outbreak of this war? (8)
- 10 (a) Name any five generals who participated in the Second World War. (5)  
(b) Describe the phoney War and the Battle of Dunkirk. (12)  
(c) How important was the Battle of Dunkirk to Britain? (8)

- 11 (a) List any five organisations that help to promote the rights of children in Zimbabwe. (5)
- (b) Describe the religious and cultural beliefs that affect the rights of the girl child in Zimbabwe. (12)
- (c) To what extent has the government of Zimbabwe addressed the problems affecting the rights of the girl child? (8)
- 12 (a) List any five years when general elections were held in Zimbabwe since Independence. (5)
- (b) Describe how Zimbabwe prepares and conducts general elections. (12)
- (c) How far have these processes been democratic? (8)
- 13 (a) Name any five countries that had interests in China in 1900. (5)
- (b) Describe the Boxers Rebellion of 1900. (12)
- (c) How successful were the boxers in removing foreign interests from China? (8)
- 14 (a) Identify any five forms of assistance given to developing countries by China up to 1976. (5)
- (b) Describe the relations between China and the Soviet Union between 1949 and 1976. (12)
- (c) To what extent did the people of China benefit from these relations during this period? (8)
- 15 (a) Name any five African countries that adopted the OAU charter (5)
- (b) Outline the aims of the OAU. (12)
- (c) To what extent did the OAU achieve its aims? (8)

## Suggested answers for the sample examination paper-History paper 2

1(a) Identify any five ethnic groups in the Balkan states. (5)

- Czechs
- Poles
- Serbs
- Russians
- Croats
- Magyar Hungarians

(b) Describe the role played by Russia and Austria – Hungary in increasing tension in the Balkans between 1907 and 1913. (12)

Russian interests

- Russia needed an outlet to the sea therefore it wanted a weak or friendly power in control of the Dardanelles and develop her Black sea ports
- It was opposed to Australian or German influence in the Balkans
- It was the Berlin-Baghdad railway as a threat to its position in the Balkans
- It wished to protect other Slav peoples as it was the largest of Slav nations
- It was hostile to Germany which ruled Polish Slavs
- It also supported Serbs and Bulgars
- Bulgars, Rumanians and Albanians had a religious link with Russia. They were members of the Orthodox church
- Russia promised Slavs that if they rebelled against Turkey, She would help them gain independence
- She hoped they would be grateful and allow her to influence their trade and foreign policy
- She wanted an outlet to the Mediterranean sea

Austria- Hungary

- Austria -Hungary had by 1900 lost her power in Italy and Germany
- Austria -Hungary included a number of Slavonic people- Serbs, Croats, Slovenes and Slovaks
- She therefore involved herself in the Balkans to make up for the losses in Serbia this would attract the support of Slavs inside Austria-Hungary

(c) To what extent was Russia responsible for the outbreak of the First World War? (8)

- Russia was the largest of the Slavs nations and saw herself as the champion of the Slavs
- Russia made war likely by backing Serbia. This made Serbia more reckless
- Russia was the first to mobilize which provoked Germany to mobilise too
- Russia encouraged Slavs to rebel against Turkey to gain independence
- Russia wanted Constantinople to gain control of the Dardanelles she also helped the Christian people to gain control of the Aegean sea coast where Salonika would become the Russian dominated outlet for Russia's trade
- Russia clashed with Britain who saw Russia threatening her interests in central Asia (India and Afghanistan)

However there were other causes of the First World War

The alliance system

Colonial rivalry

Naval race

Economic rivalry

2(a) Identify few new weapons used during the First World War. (5)

- Tanks
- Zeppelins
- Poison gas
- Bomber planes
- Machine guns
- Howitzers
- U-boats

(b) Describe the events which led to the failure of the Schlieffen Plan. (12)

- The plans failed to anticipate that Britain might enter the war to defend Belgium
- The British Expeditionary Force (BEF) landed in France holding up the German advance at Mons
- German forces in Belgium were weakened when some forces were withdrawn to go and fight the Russians who had mobilised more quickly than the German expected
- British rifle fire was so rapid that the Germans thought the troops had machine guns

- British resistance at Mons slowed Germany advance and gave the French more time to prepare
- Von Kluck the German commander in France realised he could not keep to the Schlieffen Plan
- He changed the plan of attack and instead of going round Paris turned to the East of Paris
- This left the channel ports along the coast free from attack and enabled the British to reinforce to get to France
- The French and British checked the Germans at the river Marne
- Germans were forced to retreat 60 kilometres and dug defensive trenches at Ypres the - British troops under Sir Douglas Haig checked German forces

(c) How important was the role of the Belgians in the failure of the Schlieffen Plan. (8)

- On 3 August 1914 German invaded Belgium
- The Belgians resisted the German advance and slowed down the German army because Belgium has signed the Treaty of London which guaranteed Belgian independence and neutrality
- After the Belgian attack Britain sent the British Expeditionary force of 90000 soldiers
- At Mons inside the Belgian boarder the German progress was stopped this affected their plan of a swift knock-out blow to France through neutral Holland, Luxemburg and Belgium
- Is affected their plan of attacking Paris because they were delayed in Belgium
- However there were other reasons for the failure of the Schlieffen Plan
- British entry into the war on the side of the Belgians
- British fire power proved too much for the Germans
- The French mobilised too quickly for the Germans
- Battle of Marne, Ypres forced the Germans to reconsider the Schlieffen plan

3 (a) List any five territories lost by Germany in Africa after the First World War. (5)

- South West Africa (Namibia)
- Cameroon

- Tanganyika/ Germany East Africa (Tanzania)
- Burundi
- Rwanda
- Togoland

(b) Outline the aims of the “Big Three” at the Paris Peace Conference in 1919. (12)

Lloyd George wanted to:

- end the German threat to the British navy and empire
- make Germany a non-aggressive country without colonies
- prevent Germany becoming so weak that a revival of European industry and trade is hindered
- prevent Germans becoming so poor that they turn to communism
- avoid humiliation of Germans so that they have no reason to seek revenge
- help secure France against Germany, but prevent France becoming too powerful
- create a balance of power so that no one European country can threaten the others
- make Germany pay for war damages

Clemenceau

- return of French flags which were taken by German
- to create a buffer zone with the Rhineland
- to hang the Kaiser
- to have Germany divided into small states
- prevention of union with Austria
- seek revenge on Germany for French suffering
- make Germany pay for the cost of the damage to France
- punish Germany for the humiliation she had inflicted on France after defeating her in 1871 ensure Germany would never be able to attack France again
- take away Germany land

- weaken her industries
- reduce her armed forces
- take away Germany land or colonies
- return of Alsace –Lorraine

## Wilson

- prevent Germany from becoming aggressive again
- punish Germany for her aggression
- avoid forcing her to pay very heavy damages
- base the peace treaties on his 14 points
- establishment of enabling peace
- to accept the responsibility of causing the war

(c) To what extent were the aims of Clemenceau fulfilled in the Treaty of Versailles. (8)

- Germany was weakened which Clemenceau wanted
- Alsace and Lorraine went back to France
- Germany was made to pay reparations
- The Saar and Ruhr coalfields were to be managed by France who would take the profits as compensation for war damages
- Germany military strength was weakened as her air force was disbanded
- The Rhineland was demilitarised
- Germany was forced to sign the war guilty clause

However,

- Germany was angered by the loss of her territory and sought revenge which the French did not want
- Reparations imposed were too harsh as a result Germany never paid them in full
- British and America views were also considered

- Reparations were not high as Clemenceau expected
- Germany was not divided into small states as Clemenceau wanted
- Rhineland did not become new states

4(a) Name any five leaders involved in the formation of League of Nations. (5)

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| • Georges Clemenceau        | • Venizelos               |
| • Woodrow Wilson            | • Leon Bourgeois          |
| • Lloyd George              | • Ikhali Inaki (Japan)    |
| • Emmanuel Vittorio Orlando | • Roberts Cecil (Britain) |
| • Jan smiths (S.A)          | • Sr Edward Grey          |
| • Jiang Jiesh (China)       | • Paul Heumans (Belgium)  |

(b) Describe the successes of the League of Nations in the 1920s. (12)

- Stopping girls from being traded as prostitutes
- Reparation of refugees
- In 1920 it solved the dispute between Sweden and Finland over Aaland Islands
- Poland and Germany over Upper Silesia
- Dispute between Peru and Columbia
- Poland and Germany over Danzig
- Stopped war between Greece and Bulgaria , in 1925
- Working and living conditions
- When the Austrian economy was on the verge of collapse (in 1922) the League organised financial help to save Austria
- Settled disputes between Chile and Peru in 1925
- In 1924 Lithuania agreed to league decision that Memel should be self-governing under Lithuania
- Settled dispute between Colombia and Venezuela in 1922
- It encouraged disarmament came up with traffic lights
- Raised minimum age at which children could be employed

- Controlled dangerous drugs
- Abolished slavery and forced labour the Mosul dispute
- Lithuania accepted decision that Poland should retain Vilna
- The Corfu incident 1933
- Supervised mandated territories

(c) How successful was the League's International Labour Organisation (ILO) in improving the working conditions among member states. (8)

- Produced over 70 conventions by 1939
- Most member countries increased the wages of workers
- Child labour stopped in many countries
- Working hours reduced to reasonable levels
- Condition of women improved
- Safety at the working place improved
- Improved cooperation between employers and employees
- However, some government refused to sign the ILO covenant
- The ILO could not apply pressure on members who refused to cooperate
- Child labour continued
- Wages continued to be low for most workers

5(a) Identify any five aims of Mussolini's domestic policy. (12)

- Unity
- Personal pride
- To make Italy self-sufficient
- To provide employment
- Introduction of a one party state
- Establish friendly relations with the church
- Ban strikes
- Stop spread of communism

- Ban trade unions
- Ban elections
- Revaluing the Italian currency (lire / lira)

(b) Describe the rise of Mussolini from 1919 to 1922. (12)

- In 1919 Mussolini set up his own party the Fascist Party
- His party adopted a policy of violence .Meeting of socialists and communists were attacked
- Workers movements were broken , wealthy industrialists and land owners supported him. The banks alone gave him £1,5 million pounds
- Liberal Prime Minister Gioliti was impressed by Mussolini and asked him to join the government's election group
- This made Mussolini more respectable and the Fascists entered elections in 1921 winning 35 seats as opposed to none in 1919
- He stopped making anti-Catholic speeches and gave up his anti-monarchy views
- 1921 and 1922 while Italy had no government Mussolini's supporters won control of several local councils including Milan
- When the socialists called for a general strike in 1922 the Fascists took over the public service and made sure everything carried on as normal
- The government had been unable to prevent the strike so king Victor Emmanuel 3 invited Mussolini to become Prime Minister
- Mussolini also attacked left wing organisation and burnt the printing press of the Avanti newspaper
- On 28 October 1922 30 000 Fascists marched by train to Rome
- The king refused to act and invited Mussolini to form a government
- Use of parades by Mussolini

(c) How far did the political problems in Italy enable Mussolini to seize power? (8)

- There was running quarrel between the government and the Pope
- There were too many political parties

- There was chaos and unrest
- The governments and politicians were not interested in solving the problems in Italy
- There were however other factors which enable Mussolini to seize power
- Wide –spread poverty in Italy
- Unemployment which swept the whole country
- Inflation which affected the middle class and workers whose savings were wiped out
- Strikes
- Food shortages
- War debts

6(a) State any five features of German Nazism. (5)

Nazism

- Anti-communists
- Anti-Semitic
- Glorification of war
- Purity of the Aryan race
- Creating of living space
- Reversing the Treaty of Versailles
- Uniting all Germany – speaking people in a 'Greater Community'
- Supremacy of the state
- Extreme nationalism
- One party state
- Violence
- Self sufficiency
- Totalitarianism
- Wanted to give incentives to workers

(b) Describe Hitler's domestic policy from 1933 to 1939. (12)

- Banning of all parties except the Nazi party
- Local governments brought under the control of Nazis
- Education controlled by the Nazi
- Indoctrination of children
- Text books rewritten to suit Nazi ideology
- Teachers closely monitored to ensure they taught Nazi propaganda
- Children spied on their teachers
- Young boys and girls drafted into the Hitler Youth
- Radio, newspapers, magazines, theatre, music and art controlled by the Minister of propaganda, Goebbels
- Public works programmes to solve unemployment
- Autarky (self-sufficiency)
- Industrialists told what to produce
- Controlling food prices and rents
- Religion was brought under state control, signing of the Concordat
- Germany was a police state and secret police, Gestapo established
- The passing of the Enabling Act which gave Hitler power to govern without consulting parliament
- Persecution of Jews
- Banning of trade unions
- The night of long knives/ elimination of opposition
- Banning of strikes, demonstration and lock outs
- Cheap/free holiday for workers

(c) To what extent did the Germans benefit from Hitler's domestic policy? (8)

- Employment for Germany
- Workers had subsidised holidays and rent was controlled
- Industrialists were happy that there was stability and no strikes were allowed

- Farmers were assured of profits on their produce as Hitler encouraged self sufficiency
- Jews were however not happy as they were ill-treated ,lost their jobs and sent to concentration camps
- Church leaders were also critical of the NAZIs as religion was brought under state control
- Trade union leaders were harassed and workers not allowed to strike

7(a) Identify any five measures introduced by F.D Roosevelt to solve the problems of the Great Depression. (5)

- Emergency Banking Act
- Federal Emergency Reliefs Administration
- Civilian Conservation Corps
- Civil Works Administration
- Tennessee Valley Authority
- National Recovery Administration
- Agriculture Adjustment Administration
- Civil Works Administration
- Public Works Administration
- Home Owners Loan Corporation
- Social Security Act
- Farm Credit Administration
- Work Progress Administration

(b) Describe measures taken by F.D Roosevelt to solve the problems of agriculture during the Great Depression. (12)

- Roosevelt introduced the Agriculture Adjustments Administration
- This was set up to aid farmers
- It invited farmers to set up cooperation and marketing schemes
- It gave loans to stop evictions
- Farmers were advised on improving soil erosion

- Farmers were asked to cut production because of over production
- Farmers were given a subsidy
- He introduced the Farmers Relief Act to help farmers
- Government money was used to pay farmers to destroy crops and slaughter animals
- The Tennessee Valley Authority was set up to improve agriculture in the valley
- Floods were controlled
- Dams were built to provided irrigation
- Encourage electrification of farms by companies

(c) How successful were these measures in solving the problems of agriculture during this period? (8)

- The Agriculture Adjustment Administration helped farmers with loans
- Farmers were helped to form co-operatives and marketing schemes
- They were also assisted with experts in agriculture
- They were advised to decrease production so as to remain viable
- The TVA helped control soil erosion
- Irrigation schemes introduced
- However the government of F.D Roosevelt was criticised for paying farmers to produce less
- The schemes made life worse for farm workers especially , blacks because they reduced production and were left without work

8(a) State any five aims of Hitler's foreign policy. (5)

- To make Germany feared and great
- To stop the spread of communism
- To reverse the Treaty of Versailles
- To retrieve German speaking people in a 'Greater German'
- Unity with Austria, the Anschluss
- Give Germans living space

(b) Outline the acts of aggression committed by Hitler up to 1939. (12)

- 1933 withdrawal of Germany from the Disarmament Conference and the League of Nations
- 1933 Hitler orders rearmament against Treaty of Versailles
- Hitler moves into Austria (1934) murder of Dolfus by Austrian NAZIs
- In the Saar plebiscite Germany ensured the NAZIs would win at all costs
- 1935 Germany publicly announces German rearmament and compulsory military service for all men with army increased to 550 000 against Treaty of Versailles
- Anglo-Germany Naval Agreement against Treaty of Versailles (1935)
- Remilitarisation of Rhineland (1936)
- Involvement in Spanish Civil War (1936-37)
- Rome-Berlin Axis (1939)
- Anti-Comintern Pact (1936) Hitler and Japan agreed to work together against Soviet Union
- Anschluss-Hitler invades Austria against Treaty of Versailles
- Occupation of Sudetenland (1938)
- NAZI- Soviet Pact (1939)
- Invasion of Memel
- Rome-Berlin –Tokyo Axis
- The Pact of steel with Italy

(c) To what extent did these acts of aggression contribute to the outbreak of the Second World War? (8)

- Hitler defied the Treaty of Versailles when he ordered rearmament
- By withdrawing from the League he was weakening a world body
- By withdrawing from the Disarmament Conference and rearming other nations started rearming
- In the Spanish Civil War Hitler supported the Nationalists under Franco forcing Russia to send troops to support socialists
- Invasion of Poland brought other powers into the war

- However there were other factors e.g. weaknesses of the League, American isolationism , world depression and Hitler's personal megalomania

9(a) Identify the two leaders and their countries which followed the policy of appeasement. (4)

- Chamberlain-Britain
- Dadaier-France

(b) Outline the causes of the Second World War of 1939-1945. (13)

- Acts of aggression by Axis powers
- Japanese aggression in the Far East-invasion of Manchuria
- Italian aggression-invasion of Abyssinia
- German aggression-moving out of disarmament conference
- Anschluss of 1938
- German Depression
- Isolationist of the United States of America
- Weaknesses of the League
- Spanish Civil War
- Invasion of the Sudetenland
- Policy of appeasement
- Invasion of Poland

(c) To what extent were Britain and France to blame for the outbreak of this war? (8)

- Britain and France should have taken a firm line with Hitler before Germany had become too strong
- An Anglo-French attack on Western Germany in 1936 at the time of occupation of Rhineland would have taught Hitler a lesson
- Hitler may not have had any definite plans for war but after the surrender at Munich he was soon convinced that Britain and France would remain passive again that he decided to gamble on war with Poland

- Chamberlain ought to have made his stand at Munich and backed the Czechs
- By giving way to Hitler appeasement increased his prestige at home
- However by attacking Poland on all fronts instead of the Polish Corridor Hitler showed that he was interested not in reversing the German loss at Versailles but destroying Poland
- He wanted to remove the stigma of defeat at the First World War by winning another war
- Hitler wanted to crush communism and had to control Russia permanently
- War was inevitable sooner or later
- Russia suspicious and keeping neutral until Poland had been dealt with
- Great depression
- Weakness of the League

10(a) Name any five generals who participated in the Second World War. (5)

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| • Montgomery (UK)      | • Wavell (UK)                   |
| • Rommel (Germany)     | • Auchineleck (UK)              |
| • Zhukov (USSR)        | • Charles De Gaulle (France)    |
| • Tojo (Japan)         | • Isoroku Yamammoto (Japan)     |
| • Macathur (USA)       | • Enrich Von Menstern (Germany) |
| • Von Paulus (Germany) | • Omar Bradley (USA)            |
| • Badoglio (Italy)     | • George S Partton (USA)        |
| • Eisenhower (USA)     |                                 |

(b) Describe the phoney War and the Battle of Dunkirk. (12)

Phoney War

- The period from the fall of Poland until the invasion of Norway is known as the 'phoney war'
- During this period there was no fighting on land at all
- In Britain her declaration of war on Germany was followed by preparations air raids , gas ,alerts , and digging of trenches and bomb-shelters
- There was no visible enemy action whatsoever

- Chamberlain's government could find no way to put into effect its guarantee of Polish independence
- Rearmament , military training and the evacuation of children in London went ahead
- Street lighting was forbidden , car headlights were masked , emergency powers were granted to the war cabinet if they were needed
- Britain and France realised they could not save Poland when it is attacked
- Germany generals are also unwilling to attack France
- France secure behind the Maginot Line was not militarily prepared to attack Germany and its Siegfried Line
- Britain was even less prepared
- Churchill in charge of the Royal Navy wanted to seize the port of Narvik in Norway to stop Germany from receiving iron ore
- Chamberlain refused arguing Britain could not attack a neutral country
- Britain and France rushed troops to help the Norwegians but later withdrew their troops

(c) How important was the Battle of Dunkirk to Britain? (8)

- At Dunkirk the British were able to hold the German
- British troops were plucked to safety
- Hitler called off a final onslaught
- The Royal Air force provided whatever cover it could
- The "Miracle of Dunkirk" was the description of the heroic story of hundreds of ships, of all sizes which sailed to Dunkirk and brought the besieged soldiers
- However the battle of Dunkirk did not solve Britain's problem
- In July 1940 Hitler gave orders for the invasion of Britain
- Britain would continue to fight the Germans until the Germans were defeated in 1945

11(a) List any five organisations that help to promote the rights of children in Zimbabwe.

(5)

- UNICEF
- Department of Social Welfare
- Child Protection Society
- Child line
- Child and law Foundation
- Farm Orphan Support Trust
- National Child Rights Monitoring Committee
- Education Child Rights Monitoring Committee
- Child Health Co- ordination Unit
- Churches
- Save the Children
- Girl child network
- Plan international
- Zimbabwe youth council

(b) Describe the religious and cultural beliefs that affect the rights of the girl child in Zimbabwe. (12)

- Appeasing the avenging spirits (kuripa ngozi)
- Custom of chiramu or sibale where young girls are socialised leading to relatives (usually brother-in-law ) touching young girls' private parts
- System of kuzvarira where young girls are pledged in marriage
- Chimutsamapfihwa or inheritance where the spirit of the deceased sister appoints a blood related sister to care for the children and husband left behind
- Chikwambo where invisible or visible objects are instructed to have sex with children
- Belief that a person gets rich by having sex with a child on the advice of traditional healers (divisi)
- Belief that sleeping with young girls or virgin cures one of HIV/AIDS

- Some people believe boys should be given preference over girls when it comes to education
- Some religious sects do not send children to school e.g. mapostori

(c) To what extent has the government of Zimbabwe addressed the problems affecting the rights of the girl child? (8)

- Immunisation of all children against the killer diseases has helped the girl child
- Children in rural areas do not pay tuition fees at government schools
- Establishment of national victims – friendly court to help children in courts
- Affirmative action programmes that favour the girls
- Scholarship targeted at the girl child to pursue further education

However economic problems have seen many girls dropping out of school

- HIV/AIDS- the girl child is lost vulnerable
- Government has no control over the cultural and religious views of the people

12(a) List any five years when general elections were held in Zimbabwe since Independence. (5)

- |        |        |
|--------|--------|
| • 1980 | • 2000 |
| • 1985 | • 2005 |
| • 1990 | • 2008 |
| • 1995 | • 2013 |

(b) Describe how Zimbabwe prepares and conducts general elections. (12)

- Process starts with the delimitation exercise
- The country is then divided into constituencies that agree with the number of seats being contested
- The President also announce the date of the elections
- Parties wishing to contest in the election start campaigning and choosing prospective candidates to represent their party

- The Zimbabwe Electoral Commission (ZEC) then starts preparation of the voters roll
- Prospective voter are invited to inspect the voters roll
- ZEC then identifies polling stations in each constituency
- ZEC appoints people to carry out voter education
- Prospective voters are educated on voting days , polling stations and the method of voting
- Appointment of constituent registrars , presiding officers , polling officers and monitors
- Training of presiding officers , polling officers and monitors on the conduct of elections
- Deployment of these people to the different polling stations
- Invitation of local and international observers for the election and accreditation
- Voting is done in one day
- Verification that the number of people who cast their votes agrees with the ballot papers of each station
- Counting of ballot papers at the command centre for each constituency
- Announcement of results
- Preparation of a consolidated report on the election

(c) How far have these processes been democratic? (8)

- Voting is always been accordance with SADC principles on elections
- Voting is done in one day only as recently demanded by SADC
- Translucent boxes are used
- Anyone wishing to participate has been allowed
- Each party contesting the election allowed to have a representative or election agent

However there have been allegations of the voters roll being in shambles

- Foreign observers especially from western countries is not allowed
- Violence

- Some parties not being given access to the national press or television
- Use of army in the electoral process
- Literate individuals assisted to vote

13(a) Name any five countries that had interests in China in 1900. (5)

- Japan
- Britain
- Russia
- France
- German
- USA
- Holland
- Austria
- Belgium

(b) Describe the Boxers Rebellion of 1900. (12)

- The Boxers were members of a Chinese nationalist secret society whose full name was the Righteous and Harmonious Corps
- They were anti- dynastic and anti- foreign
- They came to prominence after disasters of flood, famine and locusts
- The roots of the rebellion lay in unemployment, hardships, bankruptcy and decline of domestic trade which was blamed on foreign domination of the Chinese economy
- They believed they were immortal and many people joined them attacking missionaries and merchants
- They moved to Beijing burning and looting anything which was contaminated by foreign contact
- The Empress appeared to support them and the foreign ambassadors summoned troops from their home countries
- On 21 June 1900 the Empress declared war on foreigners taking siege to foreign delegations in Beijing
- The siege lasted 55 days during which 1 000 westerners and 3 000 Chinese Christians waited for relief
- The Russians, Japanese, Indians and English rescued the hostages.
- On 66 foreigners had been killed
- The Empress disowned the Boxers in 1900 but in 1901 accepted peace brought by the Boxer Protocol

- The Chinese agreed to pay \$67 million in reparations over 40 years
- 10 officials were to be executed and 100 more punished
- In 45 cities examinations were suspended meaning no Chinese could win promotion within the civil service

(c) How successful were the boxers in removing foreign interests from China

- The boxers were able to mobilise the Chinese against foreigners
- They killed many missionaries and besieged diplomats and foreigners popularising the problem of the Chinese
- They were able to get the support of the empress who declared war of foreigners

However the boxer Rebellion was suppressed

- Foreign domination of China continued
- Boxers were arrested and shot
- Boxers made to pay compensation

14(a) Identify any five forms of assistance given to developing countries by China up to 1976. (5)

- Military assistance
- Provision of weapons
- Training
- Military bases
- Scholarship to study in China
- Diplomatic support at UN
- Road construction
- Finance

(b) Describe the relations between China and the Soviet Union between 1949 and 1976. (12)

- Stalin did not support Mao during his war with Jiang Jiesh
- In 1949 Stalin recognised Mao and the communists
- Russia provided experts, to help the Chinese improve their economy
- In the 1950s relations between China and the Soviet Union deteriorated each claiming to be the true upholder of pure communism
- After Stalin died Mao thought of himself as Communism's elder statesman but Soviet Union did not agree
- The Soviet Union did not want to share her secrets on atomic power with China
- The Great Leap Forward was criticised by the Soviet Union as not following the Russian path
- Mao criticised Khrushchev's visit to the USA and his meetings with Eisenhower and Kennedy
- Mao called Russia the 'ghoulash society'
- At the 22nd party conference in 1960 Soviet Union withdrew 1390 technicians working in China and cut off technical aid hampering Chinese development
- In the Cuban Crisis of 1962 China accused Russia of cowardice
- In 1964 Khrushchev planned a meeting of all communist leaders to get them to throw China out of the Communist club
- Khrushchev fell from power
- China described the Soviet Union as a paper tiger anxious to make peace and detente with the west
- The clash of India and China over the Himalaya
- Russia refused to help China
- In 1973 Zhou Enlai warned the 10th Chinese party congress to be on their guard against a surprise attack from the Soviet Union
- Same year border clashes between China and Soviet Union on the Kazakhstan border
- Russia moved (1973) her mobile missile launchers into Mongolia to threaten China

- The Soviet Union compared China to an Asian Hitler
- Mao in turn called the Soviet Union rulers the new 'Czars' and 'fascists'
- China provided diplomatic support to Albania against Russian influence

(c) To what extent did the people of China benefit from these relations during this period? (8)

- At first China benefited from the help of the Soviet Union
- She received experts who helped in industry and agriculture
- She received loans from the Soviet Union
- She had a military pact with Stalin

However the Soviet Union withdrew all technical experts without warning

- The Soviet Union refused to share information on making the atomic bomb with China leaving China to spend disproportionate amounts of money on the project
- Soviet Union refused to give diplomatic support for China to be admitted at the United Nations
- Soviet Union gave China less aid than she gave to India

15 (a) Name any five African countries that adopted the OAU charter (5)

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| • Ethiopia | • Somalia      |
| • Uganda   | • Sudan        |
| • Ghana    | • Chad         |
| • Algeria  | • Sierra Leone |
| • Egypt    | • Cameroon     |
| • Liberia  | • Nigeria      |

(b) Outline the aims of the OAU. (12)

- To promote unity and solidarity of African states
- To co-ordinate and intensify efforts to achieve a better life for African states

- To rid Africa of all forms of colonialism
- To promote political and diplomatic cooperation
- To promote international cooperation between African states themselves and the Wider World
- To promote economic cooperation and other forms of cooperation in areas like transport, education, culture, health, sanitation and technology
- To be non-aligned
- To promote sports
- To defend the territorial sovereignty and integrity of Africa

(c) To what extent did the OAU achieve its aims? (8)

- It succeeded in the de-colonisation of Africa through the OAU liberation committee
- It mediated successfully in the Algeria- Morocco border dispute in 1963
- It solved internal problems in Liberia and Angola
- It managed to unite Africa and to speak with one voice in world affairs
- It managed to assist refugees in hot spots like Somalia, Eritrea, Rwanda and Burundi
- It promoted democratic governments especially in sub-Saharan Africa

However civil wars were rampant in Nigeria, Chad, Rwanda and Burundi

- Member states failed to speak with one voice as they allowed themselves to be divided by personal and ideological differences
- It failed to check murderous regimes and dictators like those of Idi Amini (Uganda)
- It failed to contain military coups for example in Nigeria and Ghana
- Member states failed to be non-aligned

## Glossary of Terms

**Abdicate** - to give up, withdraw from the throne usually by a king

**Advocate** – a person who support others to make their voices heard, or ideally for them to speak up for themselves

**Allied powers** - Britain, France, Russia, USA, and their supporters during First World War

**Antagonistic rhetoric**-too much hostile talk

**Apartheid** – the policy of racial separation used in South Africa from 1948 to 1990

**Arbitration** – a process through which two or more parties use an arbitrator to resolve a dispute

**Arbitrator** – the person to whom authority to settle or judge a dispute is delegated

**Armaments** - weapons of war

**Axis powers** - Germany, Italy, Japan and other supports of this group during world war one

**Battles** - military encounters

**Bulwark** - a defensive mechanism or position towards something hostile

**Capitalism**-a system in which a countries trade and industry are controlled by private owners for profit

**Civil war**-a war between the groups of people within the same country

**Colonialism** - the colonial domination policy pursued by the powers of Europe, from the second half of the nineteenth century to the years following World War two

**Communism** - a political system in which the property is owned by the community

**Compulsory** - making something mandatory or required

**Conciliation** – the act of bringing peace and harmony

**Conscription** – compulsory enlistment by the government into military services

**Cooperation** – ready to work with another person or in a team

**Defeat** - preventing someone from achieving an aim

**Defence** – the action of protecting from attack

**Democracy** - rule by the people, especially as a form of government; either directly or through elected representatives

**Detente** - a lessening of tensions especially among nations

**Disarmament** - the reduction or withdrawal of military forces and weapons

**Discrimination** - distinct treatment of an individual or group to their disadvantage; treatment or consideration based on class or category rather than individual merit

**Festival** – an event or community gathering, usually staged by a local community, which centres on some theme, sometimes on some unique aspect of the community

**Freedom of Association** is the right to form societies, clubs and other groups of people and to meet with people individually without any restriction

**Ideology** - a system of ideas that an economic or political theory is based on

**Imperialism** - the policy of forcefully extending a nation's authority by territorial gain or by the establishment of economic and political dominance over other nations

**Independence** - the state or quality of being independent; freedom from dependence; exemption from reliance on, control by others; self-subsistence or maintenance

**Integrity** - steadfast adherence to a strict moral or ethical code

**International relations** - the way a nation conduct a business or relation with another

**Invasion** - an act of entering a country so as to conquer or occupy

**Landlocked country** - a country surrounded by land, having no borders with the sea

**Liberal Democracy** - a democratic form of government in which individual rights is protected

**Mediation** – negotiation to resolve differences conducted by some impartial party

**Multiparty** – involving many political parties

**Pacts/treaties** - agreements signed by countries

**Polarised** - separated into opposite positions

**Rearmament** - the process of building up new stock of military weapons

**Rebellious** - armed resistance to an established government or ruler

**Reconciliation** - a process of restoring friendly relations

**Regional** - pertaining to a specific region or district

**Reparations** - making amends for wrongs committed especially by payment

**Rivalry** - the act of competing with another for the same thing

**Run off** - a further election after or after an inconclusive result

**Satellite states** - smaller countries under control or dominance of a bigger state or nation

**Socialism** - the intermediate phase of social development between capitalism and full communism. It is a strategy whereby the state has control of all key resource-producing industries and manages most aspects of the economy, in contrast to laissez faire capitalism

**Socialism** - the theory that a country's land, transport, industry and other sources of wealth should be controlled by community as a whole

**Solidarity** - a bond of unity between individuals, united around a common goal or against a common enemy, such as the unifying principle that defines the labour movement

**Sovereignty** – the state of making laws and controlling resources without the coercion of other nations

**Stability** – the condition of being stable; being in equilibrium

**Struggle** - to labour in difficulty

**Unanimous decision** – sharing the same views or opinions, and being in harmony or accord

**Underdevelopment** – the condition of being sufficiently developed

**Victory** - an act of winning

**Violation/defiance** – open refusal

**World war** – a major war involving almost all the continents of the world







